RUSSIAN PUNCTUATION
AND RELATED SYMBOLS
A GUIDE FOR ENGLISH SPEAKERS

EDWARD VAJDA &
VALENTINA UMANETS

SLAVICA
Table of Contents

Verbose Table of Contents .......................................................... ii

Preface .......................................................................................... ix

Introduction .................................................................................. xii

Part One. Syntax

1. Basic Sentence Structure .......................................................... 1
2. Secondary Sentence Elements .................................................. 10
3. The Complex Sentence ............................................................ 22
4. The Compound Sentence ........................................................ 29
5. Overview of Sentence Types .................................................... 35

Part Two. Punctuation

6. Beginning and End Punctuation ............................................... 38
7. The Comma of Enclosure .......................................................... 49
8. The Comma of Separation ........................................................ 93
9. The Semicolon ........................................................................ 113
10. The Colon ............................................................................. 117
11. The Dash .............................................................................. 121
12. Parentheses and Brackets ....................................................... 147
13. Quotation Marks ................................................................... 154
14. Punctuating Direct Speech ..................................................... 160

Part Three. Symbols Resembling Punctuation

15. Symbols Used as Spelling Devices ......................................... 168
16. Symbols Used with Numbers .................................................. 195
17. Symbols Used to Format Texts ............................................... 199

Keys to the Exercises ................................................................. 206

Bibliography ............................................................................. 242

Index ......................................................................................... 244
## Verbose Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>xii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Part One. Syntax</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Basic Sentence Structure</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1. The Parts of Speech</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2. Definition of a Sentence</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3. Primary Sentence Elements</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4. Intonational and Communicative Sentence Types</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.1. The Narrative Sentence</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.2. The Interrogative Sentence</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.3. The Imperative Sentence</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.4. The Exclamatory Sentence</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5. Information Structure in a Sentence</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise 1.1</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Secondary Sentence Elements</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1. Extended Sentences</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2. Types of Secondary Elements in the Sentence</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.1. Adverbial Modifiers</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.2. Object Complements</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.3. Predicate Nominals</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.4. Attributes</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.5. Appositives</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise 2.1</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3. Detached Secondary Elements in a Sentence</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4. Formally Unconnected Words in a Sentence</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise 2.2</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. The Complex Sentence</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1. Complex Sentences with Explanatory Clauses</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2. Complex Sentences with Attributive Clauses</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3. Complex Sentences with Dependent Adverbial Clauses</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise 3.1</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. The Compound Sentence</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1. Single Conjunctions (Простые союзы)</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2. Repeating Conjunctions (Повторяющиеся союзы)</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3. Parallel Sentence Elements (Однородные члены предложения)</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.4. Generalizing Words with Parallel Sentence Elements .......... 32
4.5. Parallel Sentences (Однородные предложения) .................. 32
Exercise 4.1 .................................................. 33

5. Overview of Sentence Types .............................................. 35
Exercise 5.1 ...................................................... 37

**Part Two. Punctuation**

6. Beginning and End Punctuation .......................................... 38
6.1. The Capital Letter .................................................. 38
6.2. End Punctuation .................................................... 39
  6.2.1. The Period Used to End a Declarative Sentence .......... 39
  6.2.2. The Question Mark Used to End an Interrogative Sentence .................................................. 40
  6.2.3. The Exclamation Point ........................................ 41
  6.2.4. Combinations of Question Mark + Exclamation Point .................................................. 42
  6.2.5. The Points of Omission, or Three Dots .................... 43
6.3. End Marks of Punctuation inside the Sentence .................... 43
  6.3.1. The Points of Omission Used Internally .................... 43
  6.3.2. The Question Mark and Exclamation Point Used inside the Sentence .................................................. 45
  6.3.3. A Period in the Middle of a Sentence ....................... 45
Exercise 6.1 ...................................................... 46

7. The Comma of Enclosure .................................................. 49
7.1. Commas Used with Direct Address .................................... 49
7.2. Commas that Set off Interjections .................................. 50
7.3. Commas that Set off Parenthetical Words .......................... 50
7.4. When Russian Uses No Comma but English Does .................. 54
Exercise 7.1 .................................................................. 56
7.5. Commas that Set off Detached Sentence Elements .................. 57
  7.5.1. Detached Modifiers ............................................. 57
  7.5.2. Participial Phrases ............................................. 58
  7.5.3. Appositives ..................................................... 58
  7.5.4. Prepositional Phrases of Exclusion or Addition ........... 59
  7.5.5. Detached Adverbial Phrases ................................... 60
  7.5.6. Extended Adverbial Modifiers ................................. 62
  7.5.7. Adverbial Modifiers in Apposition ........................... 63
  7.5.8. Phrases of Comparison ........................................ 64
7.6. Commas with Particles and Response Phrases ....................... 66
Exercise 7.2 .................................................................. 66
7.7. Commas Used to Set off Subordinate Clauses ....................... 68
  7.7.1. Commas that Set off Explanatory Clauses ................... 69
Exercise 7.3 ................................................................. 71

7.7.2. Commas that Set off Attributive Clauses .......... 72
7.7.3. Commas that Set off Predicate Subordinate
  Clauses .......................................................... 75
Exercise 7.4 ................................................................. 76
7.7.4. Commas that Set off Dependent Clauses of Place ... 77
Exercise 7.5 ................................................................. 79
7.7.5. Commas that Set off Dependent Clauses of Time ... 80
Exercise 7.6 ................................................................. 82
  7.7.6. Commas that Set off Dependent Clauses of
  Purpose ......................................................... 82
Exercise 7.7 ................................................................. 84
  7.7.7. Commas that Set off Dependent Clauses of
  Manner ......................................................... 85
  7.7.8. Commas that Set off Dependent Clauses of Effect ... 88
  7.7.9. Commas that Set off Dependent Clauses of
  Condition ....................................................... 89
  7.7.10. Commas that Set off Dependent Clauses of
  Concession ..................................................... 90
Exercise 7.8 ............................................................... 91

8. The Comma of Separation ........................................... 93
  8.1. Commas that Separate Parallel Items not Joined by a
        Coordinating Conjunction .......................... 93
  8.2. Punctuation in Strings of Adjectival Modifiers ........ 94
  8.3. Use of the Comma to Separate Repeated Words ....... 98
  8.4. Punctuation with Parallel Sentence Elements Joined
        by a Simple Coordinating Conjunction .............. 99
Exercise 8.1 ............................................................... 102
  8.5. Punctuation in Parallel Sentences (Однородные
        предложения) Combined into a Compound Sentence ...... 103
  8.6. The Comma plus Simple Adversative Conjunction .... 105
  8.7. Commas that Introduce Repetitions of a Conjunction .... 106
Exercise 8.2 ............................................................... 110

9. The Semicolon .......................................................... 113
  9.1. The Semicolon with Extended Items in a Series ....... 113
  9.2. The Semicolon plus Coordinating Conjunction in
        Clauses with Internal Punctuation .................... 114
  9.3. The Semicolon Used to Set off Extended Dependent
        Clauses in a Series .................................... 114
  Exercise 9.1 .......................................................... 116

10. The Colon .............................................................. 117
  10.1. The Colon Used to Introduce a Series ................. 117
10.2. The Colon Used to Explain the Reason for an Action ........ 118
10.3. The Colon Used to Introduce Quoted Material after Reporting Words ................................................. 118
10.4. The Colon Used to Introduce Words Describing a Vivid Impression ...................................................... 119
Exercise 10.1 ........................................................................................................................................ 120
11. The Dash ................................................................................................................................................. 121

11.1. The Dash Used in Place of a Linking Verb ......................... 121
11.1.1. The Subject and Predicate are Both Nouns ............... 121
11.1.2. With Verbal Infinitives .............................................. 122
11.1.3. When the Predicate Begins with один из ‘one of’ ................................................................. 123
11.1.4. With Number Words (Числительные) ......................... 123

11.2. Types of Sentences Where No Dash Separates Subject and Predicate Nominal ........................................... 124
Exercise 11.1 ........................................................................................................................................ 129

11.3. The Dash in Elliptic Sentences (Неполные предложения) ........................................................................ 130

11.4. The Dash Used to Introduce a Generalizing Word (Обобщающее слово) after a List of Items ................... 131

11.5. A Dash Used in a Compound Sentence when an Adversative Conjunction is Omitted ................................ 132

11.6. The Dash Used instead of a Comma or Comma plus Coordinating Conjunction in a Compound Sentence ....... 133

11.7. The Dash Used instead of Comma plus Subordinating Conjunction ............................................................... 134

11.7.1. Condition .............................................................................. 134
11.7.2. Time .................................................................................. 135
11.7.3. Result ................................................................................ 136

Exercise 11.2 ........................................................................................................................................ 136

11.7.4. Comparison of Dashes and Colons Used to Convey Cause and Effect ....................................................... 138

Exercise 11.3 ........................................................................................................................................ 139

11.8. The Dash Separating Two Words Denoting Space, Time, or Quantity .............................................................. 140

11.9. The Dash Used to Introduce Words that Elaborate on the Meaning of the Preceding Word ................................ 140

11.10. Dashes Used to Set off an Inserted Sentence Element Pronounced with Special Emotive Intonation ................................................................. 143

11.11. Heterogenous Combinations of Comma and Dash .......................................................................................... 143

Exercise 11.4 ........................................................................................................................................ 145
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12. Parentheses and Brackets</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.1. Parentheses with Incidental Words and Phrases</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.2. Parentheses which Enclose Stage Directions</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.3. Marks Used Together with a Closing Parenthesis</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.4. The Square Brackets (Квадратные скобки)</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.5. The Angle Brackets (Угловые скобки)</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise 12.1</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Quotation Marks</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1. Direct Speech</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2. Words Used in Some Special Way</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.3. Quotation Marks with Names, Epithets, and Titles</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.4. Review of Marks Used Together with an End Quote</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.5. Quotation Marks Used inside Other Quotation Marks</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise 13.1</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Punctuating Direct Speech</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.1. Punctuating Dialogue When Each New Line is Set off</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as a Separate Paragraph</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.3. Punctuation of Direct Speech within a Larger Text</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.3.1. The Reporting Words Precede the Quote</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.3.2. The Reporting Words Follow the Quote</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.3.3. The Reporting Words Interrupt the Quote</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4. Punctuation Used with the Dashes that Set off Reporting Words</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inside Quoted Material</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.1. The Reporting Words Interrupt a Sentence</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.2. The Reporting Words Follow a Narrative Sentence</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.3. Reporting Words Following a Question or Exclamation</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.4. The Reporting Words Follow Points of Omission</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.5. The Reporting Words Follow a Closing Parenthesis</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.6. Part of the Reporting Words Refers to the Preceding Quote and Part to the Quote Following</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.5. Quoted Material in the Role of a Primary Sentence Element</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise 14.1</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Part Three. Symbols Resembling Punctuation

15. Symbols Used as Spelling Devices .................................................. 168
   15.1. The Apostrophe (Апостроф) .................................................... 168
         15.1.1. Foreign Surnames Beginning in І’ .................................... 168
         15.1.2. Irish names Beginning in O’ .......................................... 168
   15.2. The Hyphen (Дефис ор чёрточка) ........................................... 169
         15.2.1. The Hyphen Used to Write Certain
                  Compound Nouns .......................................................... 169
   Exercise 15.1 .................................................................................. 182
   15.3. The Hyphen Used to Divide a Word at the End of a
         Line of Type ........................................................................... 183
   Exercise 15.2 .................................................................................. 184
   15.4. The Capital Letter (Прописная бу́ква) .................................... 184
         15.4.1. Words Capitalized in Russian and English ....................... 185
         15.4.2. Words Capitalized in English but Not in
                  Russian ........................................................................... 189
   Exercise 15.3 .................................................................................. 190
   15.5. Use of the Period with Abbreviations (Сокращения) ............... 191
         15.5.1. Abbreviations Which Require a Period ......................... 191
         15.5.2. Abbreviations Which Do Not End in a Period ............... 192
   Exercise 15.4 .................................................................................. 194

16. Symbols Used with Numbers ............................................................ 195
   16.1. The Comma (Запятая) Used with Numbers ......................... 195
   16.2. Symbols Used in Writing Dates ............................................. 196
   16.3. Symbols Used in Arithmetic ............................................... 196
   16.4. Symbols Used to Write Temperature .................................... 197
   16.5. The Colon Used in Clock Time ........................................... 197
         16.6.1. Fractions ....................................................................... 198
         16.6.2. In the Meaning “per” ....................................................... 198
   16.6. The Slash (Вертика́льная папочка от дробь) ..................... 197
   Exercise 16.1 .................................................................................. 198

17. Symbols Used to Format Texts .......................................................... 199
   17.1. The Capital Letter Used in Formatting Poetic Texts ............. 199
         17.1.1. Lines of Verse .................................................................. 199
         17.1.2. Stage Directions .............................................................. 199
         17.1.3. Quoted Material in an Ongoing Sentence ....................... 200
         17.1.4. Titles and Headings ......................................................... 201
   17.2. Punctuating and Formatting Letters .................................... 201
         17.2.1. Formatting the Date at the Top ..................................... 201
         17.2.2. The Salutation Followed by an Exclamation
                  Point .............................................................................. 202
         17.2.3. Spelling of the Formal “You” ....................................... 202
17.2.4. Punctuation of the Farewell Salutation ............... 203
17.3. The Period Used as a Formatting Device .................. 203
17.4. A Few Final Bookish Details .................................. 204
Exercise 17.1 .................................................................. 205

Keys to the Exercises ...................................................... 206
Exercise 1.1 .................................................................. 206
Exercise 2.1 .................................................................. 206
Exercise 2.2 .................................................................. 207
Exercise 3.1 .................................................................. 208
Exercise 4.1 .................................................................. 209
Exercise 5.1 .................................................................. 211
Exercise 6.1 .................................................................. 211
Exercise 7.1 .................................................................. 213
Exercise 7.2 .................................................................. 214
Exercise 7.3 .................................................................. 216
Exercise 7.4 .................................................................. 217
Exercise 7.5 .................................................................. 218
Exercise 7.6 .................................................................. 219
Exercise 7.7 .................................................................. 219
Exercise 7.8 .................................................................. 221
Exercise 8.1 .................................................................. 222
Exercise 8.2 .................................................................. 224
Exercise 9.1 .................................................................. 226
Exercise 10.1 ................................................................. 227
Exercise 11.1 ................................................................. 228
Exercise 11.2 ................................................................. 229
Exercise 11.3 ................................................................. 230
Exercise 11.4 ................................................................. 232
Exercise 12.1 ................................................................. 233
Exercise 13.1 ................................................................. 234
Exercise 14.1 ................................................................. 235
Exercise 15.1 ................................................................. 236
Exercise 15.2 ................................................................. 237
Exercise 15.3 ................................................................. 238
Exercise 15.4 ................................................................. 238
Exercise 16.1 ................................................................. 239
Exercise 17.1 ................................................................. 240

Bibliography .................................................................. 242

Index ........................................................................... 244
Preface

This book is an introduction to the complexities of Russian punctuation. The rules of Russian punctuation were only codified quite recently, with the publication of A.B. Shapiro’s Основы русской пунктуации (Fundamentals of Russian Punctuation) in 1955. Since then, other excellent references on the subject have appeared, including A.N. Naumovich’s Современная русская пунктуация (Modern Russian Punctuation) in 1983; and Орфография и пунктуация: справочник (Orthography and Punctuation: A Guide), by N.S. Valgina and V.N. Svetlysheva. These books offer a rich array of information on the use of punctuation and related symbols in modern literary Russian, and we have employed them as sources for writing the present book. Nevertheless, all of them (as well as the other books listed in the bibliography beginning on page 227) were written for educated native Russians and are accessible to only the most advanced non-native student. In creating a guide to Russian punctuation intended for intermediate-level students whose native language is English, we hope to fill an important gap in Russian pedagogy.

There are two reasons we believe our book will serve the needs of English-speaking students at the intermediate or advanced level.

First, the use of Russian punctuation cannot be inferred simply through familiarity with English punctuation. At first glance, this does not seem to be the case at all. Russian uses the same 10 marks of punctuation as English, nine of which seem entirely familiar: the period, пунктуации тóчка (.), the comma, заняти́я (,), the semicolon, тóчка с запятой (;), the colon, двоетóчие (:), the dash, тирé (—), the exclamation point, восклица́тельный знак (!), the question mark, вопро́сительный знак (?), the points of omission, многотóчие (...), the parentheses, скó́бки (() ). Only the Russian кавы́чки (“ “), or quotation marks, have an unfamiliar form; and still, the notion of quotes seems familiar enough from English. Despite their almost complete similarity in form, however, all ten of these marks show significant differences in usage between Russian and English. These differences are usually not predictable based on even the most thorough knowledge of English punctuation. For every instance where the use of some punctuation mark in English finds an exact parallel in Russian, there seem to be at least two others where a knowledge of English punctuation will actually interfere with the choice of the correct mark in Russian.

The second reason we feel our book will be useful to English-speaking students is that no guide to Russian punctuation has ever been written with the English speaker specifically in mind. Most textbooks of Russian rarely, if ever, make mention of any of the numerous differences between Russian and
English punctuation. This creates the false impression that Russian punctuation is simply a carbon copy of the English system. And, as we have already said and will soon show you in great detail, this erroneous assumption can easily cause frequent confusion and even occasional embarrassment.

Thus, although Russian and English make use of essentially the same set of graphic symbols as marks of punctuation, the rules for using many of these marks differ considerably between the two languages. Students who—for want of ever having been shown otherwise—blindly apply the rules of English punctuation when writing Russian, will confuse their Russian readers at least occasionally, and sometimes very seriously. This book will forewarn you of instances where an improper mark of punctuation, placed through naive analogy to English, can distort the intended meaning of a Russian phrase or sentence. In the following pages you will find explanations of how to use each Russian punctuation symbol properly. You will also be shown many contexts where English requires one mark of punctuation while Russian requires an entirely different mark or no mark at all.

Finally, to native Russian specialists on punctuation, whose many scholarly and pedagogical accomplishments in their field have done much to make our book possible, we feel the need to explain a few significant departures from the methods usually employed in writing guidebooks and references on Russian punctuation. These features of our book, which might seem unnecessary or unorthodox in a book written for native Russians, are intended to assist the English-speaking student who is still in the process of gaining a basic mastery of the Russian language.

First, we have included—as a preliminary to the description of punctuation itself—a discussion of the basic terms and categories of Russian syntax. We have also provided a section on punctuation-like symbols that are used for spelling, formatting texts, etc. We felt the need to include this final part of our book because many of these symbols resemble punctuation marks in form and tend naturally to be associated with punctuation by the student; also, as is the case with Russian punctuation itself, there is no book currently available that attempts to teach these punctuation-like devices to the English-speaking student in any comprehensive fashion.

Second, specialists will notice that we have not taken a majority of the example sentences from the classics of Russian literature; in fact, we have taken only occasional examples from the writing of famous Russian authors (in such cases, the Russian sentences are followed by the author’s name in parentheses, or by abbreviations such as П. for А.С. Пушкин, and Л. for М.Ю. Лермонтов). We have also used many proverbs as examples, marking each one with the note пословица, proverb. Most example sentences we have adapted from Russian newspaper or magazine articles, or from contemporary popular literature, without citing the specific source.

Finally, we have placed a stress mark on every multisyllabic Russian word, and have even marked the stress on the monosyllabic conjunctive words что,
what; and кáк, how, to distinguish them from the unstressed conjunctions что, that; and как, as, a practice not normally followed even in Russian texts that have been accented for pedagogical purposes.

We hope that the English-speaking reader will gain three invaluable insights from our book: a basic understanding of Russian sentence structure (Part I of our book); a solid introduction to the use of punctuation marks in Russian (Part II, divided into nine chapters); and a basic introduction to punctuation-like symbols and devices not generally discussed in other sources accessible to the English-speaking student (Part III, divided into three chapters). Each section of the book, including the initial discussion of Russian syntax, is accompanied by exercises that check the student's progress. Keys with suggested solutions to each exercise are provided in the back of the book for self study, and as an aid to the teacher.

We invite you to work through this book, either with or without a teacher. Your attempt to master literary Russian will remain significantly incomplete unless you assimilate the material we have gathered for you here.

This book is dedicated to one of its authors, Valentina Umanets, who passed away while the manuscript was in press. I would also like to thank Steve and Erika Tyler for their determination in seeing the manuscript through to publication and for helping to proofread the final draft.
Introduction

Why bother learning any special rules for using punctuation in a foreign language? Very few textbooks of Russian mention anything about punctuation at all. The reason you should pay attention to punctuation is that it is important for expressing meaning in a text. Also, the rules of punctuation are not very difficult to learn.

Have you ever thought about how completely indispensable punctuation is to any written language?

Punctuation, which is nothing more than a system of graphic symbols devised so that writing can express every nuance of the spoken language, appeared relatively recently in Europe: in the middle of the 15th century. At that time, the Manucchi brothers of Italy, who operated a printing shop, developed the first modern system of European punctuation. Their basic system of nearly a dozen graphic symbols was later adopted by the majority of European nations. Today, some form or another of this European-style punctuation is used in most written languages throughout the world. Russian punctuation had been developing since Russians acquired the Cyrillic alphabet in the 11th Century, but by the 18th Century it had already come to resemble the Manucci-style punctuation used elsewhere in Europe. Despite underlying similarities and a common origin, however, the specific rules for using punctuation tend to vary in each language, and Russian usage differs significantly from that familiar to English speakers. Hence the need for a special book such as this.

Nevertheless, it is a fortunate thing that punctuation was invented and spread from language to language, regardless of whether today’s commas, colons and periods are used in exactly the same way in each individual language. The marks of punctuation, which may often seem insignificant if not downright annoying, actually play an important role in conveying the proper meaning. In fact, punctuation can at times be much more important than spelling. Judge for yourself from the following examples.

If you mistakenly write the Russian word for “cow” as *карóва instead of the correct корóва, any Russian will still understand that you are referring to an ungulate that gives milk.

By contrast, just look at what havoc a misplaced or omitted comma can sometimes cause. Here is a Russian sentence without punctuation of any kind:

помиловать нельзя казнить

The English translation of this sentence, also without punctuation of any kind, would be: pardon forbidden execute. Without any punctuation in the original Russian, a clear understanding of the meaning of these words is impossible.
Was the judge's decision to pardon or to execute? Different punctuation yields different meanings. And here is a case where the use of proper punctuation is literally a matter of life and death. If a comma is placed after the first word, the following sentence results: Помиловать, нельзя казнить. Pardon. Don't execute. If the comma is placed after the second word, the sentence is transformed into a stern order of execution: Помиловать нельзя, казнить Pardon forbidden. Execute.

This last example was taken from a story about a Russian boy who was too lazy to learn his punctuation marks. His ignorance nearly cost him his life!

Although not every period or comma will be quite so vital to your survival, punctuation must certainly be taken seriously by any person who wishes to write clearly and be understood properly. And since you are reading this book, that person must be you!

This book will teach you the basic principles and rules of Russian punctuation. You will find that it is divided into three parts. Because Russian and English sentence structure differ significantly, and because punctuation very often depends upon sentence structure, Part One provides an overview of Russian syntax. Part Two moves on to the topic of punctuation itself; nine chapters discuss each individual mark of punctuation and its various uses, taking care along the way to compare and contrast the Russian punctuation with the English. Finally, we have included in Part Three a discussion of some common symbols, such as the hyphen, дефис (-), that resemble punctuation but are used for purposes other than to divide or set off the parts of the sentence (the hyphen, for instance, is a spelling device and never a true mark of punctuation). It would have been possible to exclude these marks from a book on Russian punctuation, but since students naturally associate them with true marks of punctuation, we have included them.

By reading the explanations in each chapter, then working through the practice exercises and checking yourself by referring to the answer keys in the back of the book, you will learn to express yourself clearly in Russian so that anyone reading what you have written will not be mislead or distracted by a misplaced or absent mark of punctuation.

If you want to write in Russian and be understood, therefore, it is not sufficient to have mastered a large vocabulary, the Russian system of orthography (spelling), and the rules of Russian grammar; you also must learn the system of Russian punctuation. Just as you have already learned the sound value of each letter of the alphabet in various contexts, you must also begin learning the various functions of each mark of punctuation.

This is the main purpose of our book. And this is the main reason for the existence of punctuation in any written language. But remember, if you intend to master Russian punctuation, you must first develop a basic knowledge of Russian syntax. Our book therefore begins with syntax.
Part One. Syntax

Chapter 1

Basic Sentence Structure

The correct use of punctuation requires a basic understanding of syntax (сънятаксис), which is nothing more than a fancy word for the patterns of sentence structure (структура предложения) in a language, and the function words (служебные слова) that serve to connect the various sentence elements. So let’s begin with an overview of how sentences are formed in Russian. This information is an essential prerequisite to the mastery of Russian punctuation, so read through it to familiarize yourself with the syntactic categories of Russian and with the conjunctions and conjunctive words used to build certain types of sentences. No attempt is made here to explain punctuation itself, although you might want to compare the marks of punctuation used in the Russian examples with those in their English translations, noting instances where the two differ.

1.1. The Parts of Speech

Every sentence is composed of words. And every word (слово) belongs to one of the syntactic classes called parts of speech (части речи). The main parts of speech are as follows:

- verb (глагол)
- noun (имя существительное)
- pronoun (местоимение)
- adjective (имя прилагательное)
- adverb (наречие)
- preposition (предлог)

The words belonging to each part of speech fulfill a specific set of syntactic roles when combined with other words. Let’s look at some of the ways these parts of speech form sentences.

1.2. Definition of a Sentence

A sentence (предложение) can be defined as a group of words that conveys a complete thought. The concept is essentially the same in Russian and English. Here are some examples of sentences:

Тишина.  
Наступило утро.  

It is quiet.  
Morning came.
Brother arrived.
The guests left yesterday.
The kids left for school already.
Father returned from work.

Sentences may consist of a single word or many words. For example, the first sentence above contains only the word тишина ‘silence’. In a context where тишина conveys the complete thought “it is quiet,” this word represents an entire sentence. Since Russian has no articles (артикль, a word such as English a and the) and omits the present tense forms of the verb быть, to be (am, is, are), single-word sentences are more common in Russian than in English. Here are more examples:

Тишина.  It’s quiet.
Вечер.  It’s evening.
Утро.  It’s morning.
Морозно.  It’s frosty.
Ветреное.  It’s windy.
Жарко.  It’s hot.
Да.  Yes.
Нет.  No.

The last two examples above illustrate that not all word-sentences consist of nouns, verbs or adjectives, such as the ones given above. Response phrases (реятивы), interjections (междомётия), and particles (частицы) can also be sentences if they express a complete thought, as in the following examples:

1. — Вот вам книга.  1. “Here’s a book for you.”
   — Спасибо.  “Thanks.”
   — Пожалуйста.  “You’re welcome.” (response phrase)
2. Ох! Как я устал!  2. Oh! How tired I am! (interjection)
3. — Баста! — сказал он решительно и громко.  3. “Enough!” he said in a loud, firm voice. (interjection)
   — А что?  “What?”
5. — Да я их вчера только видела собственными глазами!  5. “But I saw them only yesterday with my own eyes!”
   — Неужто? “Really?” (particle)

Although баста!, enough, knock it off, is a colloquial interjection, and неужто?, really, are you sure? is a particle generally regarded as substandard, both represent whole sentences in any context where they convey a complete thought. It would be possible to replace such words with longer sentences that more explicitly convey the meaning intended:
Трудно пове́рить в это. It's difficult to believe that.
Кака́я неожи́данность! How unexpected!
Я пропьо́рочён! I'm really shocked!

Multi-word sentences tend to express a thought more explicitly than single words like Да, Yes; Неужéли? Really? or Бéста! Enough! But these single words are sentences all the same.

1.3. Primary Sentence Elements

Each word plays a particular syntactic role in the structure of any given sentence. Most sentences consisting of several words can be divided into a subject (подлежа́щее) and a predicate (сказу́емое). Generally speaking, the predicate is the word or words expressing an action, activity, state, or event. The role of predicate is usually played by a verb and its modifiers. The subject names someone or something involved in that event and also normally triggers grammatical agreement in the predicate verb. The role of subject is usually played by a noun or pronoun and its modifiers. The subject and predicate are known as primary sentence elements (глáвные чле́ны предложéния)

A sentence with a single subject and a single predicate is known as a simple sentence (простое предложение). If the subject consists of only one word and the predicate also consists of one word, the sentence is known as a simple non-extended sentence (простое нераспространённое предложение). Most simple non-extended sentences in Russian can be divided neatly into a subject and predicate. In the examples below, the subject is emphasized by being printed in bold italic type:

1. Гóсти у́ехали. The guests departed.
2. Прийехал брат. Brother arrived.
3. На́ступил у́тро. Morning came.
4. Дéти ушли. The kids left.

In some Russian sentences the predicate contains no verb, but instead consists of a noun, pronoun, or adjective called a predicate nominal (име́нное сказу́емое). Predicate nominals answer the question кто? who? or каков? какой? what kind of? In the examples below, the predicate nominals are given in bold italic.

1. Пу́шкин — поэ́т. Pushkin is a poet.
2. Они́ русские. They are Russians.
3. Пого́да жéркая The weather is hot.
4. Это он. It is he.

Notice that in English the predicate nominal is generally introduced by a linking verb (глагóл-связка), such as is or are. Linking verbs are also part of
the predicate. Russian usually omits the linking verb in the present tense, leaving the predicate nominal alone to serve as the predicate.

1.4. Intonational and Communicative Sentence Types

Each sentence is uttered for a specific communicative function (коммуникативная задача). There are a limited number of these basic functions. For instance, a sentence can be uttered as a statement (предложение), question (вопрос), request (просьба), or exclamation (восклицание). In speech these sentence types are differentiated through the use of intonation (интонация), word order (порядок слов), or certain function words (служебные слова).

intonation plays a particularly important role in expressing communicative function in Russian.

1.4.1. The Narrative Sentence

A narrative sentence (повествовательное предложение) states a fact or provides a description. Here are some examples:

1. В лесу раздался громкий шум.
   A loud noise rang out in the woods.

2. Осеннее утро. Прозрачное небо. Лёгкий ветерок шумит в пожелтелшей листве.
   An autumn morning. A clear sky. A light breeze stirs the yellow leaves.

3. Нина Ивановна уехала в деревню.
   Nina Ivanovna went to the village.

Narrative sentences in spoken Russian usually have a gently falling intonation toward the end.

1.4.2. The Interrogative Sentence

An interrogative sentence (вопросительное предложение) asks a question. There are several types of interrogative sentences.

Some contain a question word (вопросительное слово), which marks them as a question. The following question words are most commonly encountered in Russian: кто? who; что? what; чей? whose; какой? what one; which one; где? place where; куда? destination where; как? how; почему? why; сколько? how much. Interrogative sentences with question words are spoken with a heavier intonational emphasis on the question word:

1. Кто написал эту книгу?
   Who wrote that book?

2. Что лежит там под столом?
   What's lying over there beneath the table?
3. Почему нам нужно знать всё это?  
   Why do we need to know all that?

Sometimes a prepositional phrase replaces the question word, as in the following examples:

4. Какого цвета твоя машина?  
   What color is your car?

5. По какому причине вы это сделали?  
   For what reason did you do that?

6. На каком основании вы нас арестовываете?  
   On what grounds are you arresting us?

Phrases that are the functional equivalent of question words likewise carry the intonational emphasis, which falls on the entire phrase.

Many questions in Russian, however, do not contain a question word at all. Because Russian word order is fluid, the intonation alone distinguishes these questions from statements. Questions without question words are spoken with a special rising-and-falling intonation centered on the word that receives the logical emphasis:

7. a. Он придет завтра? (emphasis on whether the action will occur)  
   Will he come tomorrow?

    b. Он придет завтра? (emphasis on the day of arrival)  
       Will tomorrow be the day he comes?

    c. Он придет завтра? (emphasis on the identity of the person coming)  
       Will he be the one coming tomorrow?

8. a. Нина выиграла? (emphasis on whether or not the action occurred)  
       Did Nina win (or not)?

    b. Нина выиграла? (emphasis on the identity of the person who won)  
       Was it Nina who won?

9. a. Ты взял статью? (general emphasis on whether the action occurred)  
       Did you take the article?

    b. Ты взял статью? (emphasis on the identity of what was taken)  
       Was it the article that you took?

    c. Ты взял статью? (emphasis on who did the taking)  
       Were you the one who took the article?

As you will hear if you ask a native speaker to read the above sentences aloud, the intonation differs from the corresponding English. In Russian, instead of a gradual rise in intonation toward the end of the question, there is a definite peak on the stressed syllable of a certain word in the sentence (most commonly
the verb). The word that carries the question emphasis receives this special “question-without-a-question-word” intonation.

Sometimes an interrogative sentence contains the particle ли, which serves either to soften a request for information or to make the question sound more rhetorical. In this type of interrogative sentence, whichever word receives the logical emphasis comes first with ли following immediately after. Here are some examples:

10. Прідёт ли он сегодня?
    Will he come tomorrow (or not)?

11. Успеют ли они это сделать?
    Will they have time to do it (or not)?

12. Всe ли готовы?
    Are all (or only some) of them ready?

The intonation in sentences containing the question particle ли is the same as in other questions without a question word.

There is another type of Russian question that carries a special intonation curve: a question asked in a series of routine questions. This type of sentence, regardless of whether it contains a question word, is normally pronounced with a rising intonation similar to that found in a completely different type of English sentence, such as the following one uttered to instigate a conflict: And what’s it to you? In Russian, this intonation is the norm for questions in a series. Here are some examples:

13. Ваша фамилия? Имя? Отчество?
    Your surname? First name? Patronymic?

14. День рождения? Место рождения?
    Your day of birth? Place of birth?

In Russian, this “question-in-a-series” intonation emphasizes the routine quality of the questions being asked. Since statements are never intoned in this way, this type of intonation can only indicate a question in a series.

1.4.3. The Imperative Sentence

An imperative sentence (побудительное предложение) is uttered to cause someone else (usually the listener) to act. Russian imperatives are pronounced with intonation similar to that used for question words, that is, with somewhat more force than is normal for English:

1. Возмите вот эту бумагу.
    Take this paper.

2. Давайте пойдём в кино.
    Let’s go to the movies.
3. Пусть Маша это сделает.
   Let Masha do it.

In Russian, emphatic intonation in the absence of a question word often signals an imperative sentence.

1.4.4. The Exclamatory Sentence

An exclamatory sentence (восклицательное предложение) is one that is pronounced with some heightened emotion. Statements, questions, and imperatives may be intoned as exclamatory sentences (the examples given above were neutral, non-exclamatory variants). The entire exclamatory sentence is pronounced relatively more loudly and with heightened intonation. Here are some examples:

1. Нужны мне эти сапоги!
   I need these boots like I need a hole in the head!

2. Нет! Ни за что не пойду!
   No! I won’t go no matter what!

3. Что?! Ты разбил моё вазу?!
   What?! You broke my vase?!

4. Какая прелестная девочка!
   What a charming little girl!

5. Какой он студент!
   Whaddaya mean he’s a college student!
   (Sarcasm: He sure doesn’t seem like one!)

As can be heard when these sentences and others like them are pronounced by a native speaker, the exact intonation curve depends on the emotion being expressed.

In Russian speech, intonation rather than word order plays the greater role in distinguishing between the various communicative types of sentences. As we will see, sentence intonation also signals the proper punctuation and vice versa.

1.5. Information Structure in a Sentence

What role, then, does word order actually play in Russian? You may have noticed that Russian word order is less rigid than English. Since word order sometimes affects punctuation, it is useful to discuss this subject here. In English the subject normally comes before the predicate in simple sentences (in other words, English word order is basically syntactic). In Russian, words conveying information already known to the listener normally come first—regardless of whether they are part of the subject or part of the predicate (in other words, Russian word order is often pragmatically determined). This means that subject or predicate may come first in Russian, depending on which word re-
ceives the contextual emphasis. Word order in Russian is more free of purely grammatical functions and is therefore more readily available for stylistic uses.

Let's examine some of the pragmatic, stylistic uses of word order in Russian. The part of a sentence that conveys old information is known as the topic (тёма) and generally comes first. The part that conveys new information is known as the comment (рёма) and normally appears at the end. Below are examples of some simple Russian sentences. Notice the different ways in which the topic is emphasized in the corresponding English translations:

*The subject is the comment (the new information):*

1. Подъехал автобус. A bus drove up.
2. Началась гроза. A storm began, or *There began a storm.*
3. Возникла проблема. A problem arose, or *There arose a problem.*

Because word order in English depends on syntax, English tends to express such pragmatic notions as topic and comment through the use of intonation or special phrasing rather than by word order. As can be seen from the translations of the examples given above, English uses the indefinite article *a* to signal that the subject is the comment (the new information). English may further emphasize that a subject is part of the comment by beginning a sentence with special words such as *There... or It...* and by placing the subject at the end. In Russian, the position of the subject at the end of the sentence alone signals that a subject is the topic, and no special words like English “there” or “it” are needed.

What about instances where the predicate is the comment (the new information) and the subject is the topic (the old information)? In Russian, a subject placed at the beginning of the sentence and a predicate placed at the end normally signals that the predicate is the topic. English, on the other hand, uses the definite article (артылькъ) the to signal that the subject conveys old information. Take a look at the following examples:

*The predicate is the comment (the new information):*

1. Автобус ушёл. The bus left.
2. Гроза кончается. The storm is ending.
3. Проблема исчезла. The problem disappeared.

Before going further, stop and complete the exercise below to test your ability to distinguish topic and comment in the information structure of Russian sentences.

**Exercise 1.1**

(*Suggested solutions to this and subsequent exercises can be found beginning on page 206.*) Tell whether the italicized subject in each sentence conveys the topic (the old information) or the comment (the new information).
1. Эту книгу взял наш профессор.
   Our professor was the one who took that book.
2. Маша ходила в магазин сегодня.
   Masha went to the store today.
3. Пошлай Маша.
   Masha was the one who went, or It was Masha who went.
4. Дети уже спят.
   The children are already sleeping.
5. Это сделал твой сын.
   It was your son who did it, or The one who did it was your son.
6. Студенты поехали на пикник.
   The students went to a picnic.
7. Каникулы больше всего любят студенты.
   Students are the ones who like time off from school the most.
8. Студенты любят больше всего отдыхать.
   What students like best is resting.
9. В доме жила пожилая женщина.
   In the house there lived an elderly woman.
10. Пожилая женщина жила на пенсии.
    The elderly woman lived on a pension.

Now that we have discussed how sentences communicate basic information, let's examine ways of extending the sentence by adding secondary elements to a single-word subject or predicate.
Chapter 2
Secondary Sentence Elements

Now that we have discussed how sentences communicate basic information, let's examine ways of extending the sentence by adding secondary elements to a single-word subject or predicate. A sentence that contains such additional elements is known as an extended sentence (непропораспространённое предложение). This chapter discusses each type of secondary element that can be used to extend the basic syntactic structure of Russian sentences.

2.1. Extended Sentences

In Chapter 1 we saw that a simple sentence (простое предложение) contains a single subject (подлежащее) and a single predicate (сказуемое). In the simple sentence Маша спит, Masha sleeps, each of these primary sentence elements consists of a single word. The word Маша is a non-extended subject (непропораспространённое подлежащее), and спит a non-extended predicate (непропораспространённое сказуемое). Because this sentence has no secondary elements of any kind it is a simple non-extended sentence (простое непропораспространённое предложение). Of course, not all simple sentences consist of a one-word subject and a one-word predicate. For example, many of the sentences in the exercise you just worked through contain several words. When additional words are added to the subject or predicate, the result is a simple extended sentence (простое распространённое предложение). Below are sentences containing extended subjects and predicates; these are highlighted in bold italic type and the elements extending each are underlined:

Sentences with an extended subject (распространённое подлежащее):

1. Пятый автóbус ушёл.
   Bus No. 5 departed.

2. Восёк человёк в высокой шапке.
   A man in a tall hat entered.

3. Исчёзли все наши трудности.
   All our problems disappeared.

Sentences with an extended predicate (распространённое сказуемое):

1. Автóbус ушёл в пять часов.
   The bus left at 5:00.
2. В комнату вошёл человек.
   A man entered the room.

3. Я мечтаю поехать на море.
   I dream of going to the seaside.

As you can see, the two main elements of a simple sentence (the subject and predicate) can be extended by adding various secondary elements. Let us now turn to a classification of these elements.

2.2. Types of Secondary Elements in the Sentence

The secondary elements (второстепенные члены предложения) used to extend the main elements of a sentence belong to the following several types: adverbial modifiers (обстоятельства), object complements (дополнения), predicate nominals (именные сказуемые), attributes (определения), and appositives (приложения). Let us examine how each type modifies the subject or predicate.

2.2.1. Adverbial Modifiers

A common way of extending the predicate is to add an adverbial modifier (обстоятельство). This modifier may consist of a simple adverb (наречие) or prepositional phrase (предложная конструкция). In terms of meaning, there are three types of adverbial modifiers:

a) An adverbial modifier of time (обстоятельство времени) answers the question когда? when? In the examples below, the predicate is italicized and the extending adverbial element is underlined:

   Его брат женился вчера.
   Гости приехали в три часа.
   Вовка родился месяц назад.

   His brother was married yesterday.
   The guests arrived at three o’clock.
   Vovka was born a month ago.

b) An adverbial modifier of place (обстоятельство места) answers some question regarding position or location. It may answer the question где? where? (specifying location); куда? to where? (specifying destination); or откуда? from where? (specifying point of origin).

   Где?

   Иван Петрович живет в Москве.
   Книга лежит на столе.
   Мы работаем здесь.

   Ivan Petrovich lives in Moscow.
   The book is lying on the table.
   We work here.

   Куда?

   Иван Петрович поехал в Москву.
   Я положил книгу на стол.
   Кира идёт сюда.

   Ivan Petrovich left for Moscow.
   I put the book on the table.
   Kira is coming here.
Отку́да?
Письмо́ пришло́ из О́мска. A letter arrived from Omsk.
Он взял кни́гу со стола. He took the book off the table.
Мы пришли́ оттуда. We came from there.

c) An adverbial modifier of manner (обстоя́тельство спо́соба дейст́вия) an-
swers the question как? how? or каки́м обра́зом? how?
Учитель говори́т бы́стро. The teacher speaks quickly.
Брат рабо́тает с энтузиа́змом. Brother works with enthusiasm.
Мы приле́жа́но занимаемсéсь. We study diligently.

Practically any verb can be extended by these types of adverbial modifiers.

2.2.2. Object Complements

Some predicates can be extended with an object complement (дополне́ние) to
the verb. This form of extension is only possible after the following types of
verbs:

a) A transitive verb (переходный гла́го́л) is one that can take a direct object
complement. A direct object (прямое дополне́ние) answers the question
кого́/что? whom/what? and takes the accusative case (вини́тельный па-
дёж) in Russian. Here is an example:

Сестра́ люби́т русску́ю ли́терату́ру.
My sister loves Russian literature.

The role of direct object is normally played by a noun phrase or a pronoun.
However, the infinitive of a verb (инфи́нитив) can also serve as the object
compliment to certain verbs (although, unlike nominal objects, it takes no case
ending in Russian):

1. Он уме́ет рабо́тать. He knows how to work.
2. Мы люби́м ходи́ть на лы́жах. We love to ski.
3. Хочу́ пое́хать на севе́р. I want to go north.

Most verbs that take an infinitive complement convey the doer’s specific
attitude or relation to the action and are known as modal verbs (мода́льные гла́го́лы),
from the word “mood.” Common modal verbs include: хотите́, to want; желать́, to wish; люби́ть, to love; нра́виться́, to like; мочь́, to be able;
уме́ть, to know how; etc.

b) An intransitive verb (непереходный гла́го́л) cannot take a direct object.
Examples are зевать́, to yawn, or спать, to sleep. A person cannot *yawn
someone or *sleep something. (The asterisk, звёздоч ка, is used by linguists
to mark examples of ungrammatical forms.) Some intransitive verbs can,
however, take an indirect object (косвенное дополнение), that is, an ob-
ject in a case other than accusative. The verb улыбнуться, to smile, for instance takes an indirect object when it answers the question кому?:

Девочка улыбнулась мне. The little girl smiled at me.

c) Many transitive verbs can take a direct object and an indirect object. This is typical for verbs of giving and speaking:

1. Отец подарил мне книгу.
   My father gave me (indirect object) a book (direct object).

2. Передай привет от меня нашим общим знакомым.
   Give my regards (dir.obj.) to our mutual acquaintances (ind.obj).

3. Офицер приказал солдатам встать.
   The officer ordered the soldiers to get up.

In the last example the Russian words солдатам, the soldiers, functions as the indirect object, since the word приказать requires a dative case object; the word встать, to get up, is an infinitival complement expressing what the soldiers are supposed to do. (Notice that in English the phrase “the soldiers” functions more like the direct object, and the infinitive seems more like the indirect object.)

Infinitives as well as nouns can serve as object complements to extend the verb. Direct as well as indirect objects are both examples of secondary elements used to extend the predicate.

2.2.3. Predicate Nominals

The predicate can likewise be extended adding a predicate nominal (именное сказуемое), which answers the question кто? who? or какой? which/what? We have already mentioned predicate nominals. Here are a few more examples:

1. Вадим Петрович был инженером.
   Vadim Petrovich was an engineer.

2. Погода будет дождливой и холодной.
   The weather will be rainy and cold.

3. Он оказался хорошим учеником.
   He turned out to be a good pupil.

A verb that can take a predicate nominal complement is known as a linking verb (глагол-связка). Examples of linking verbs are: быть, to be, (including past and future tense forms such as был, was, будет, will be, etc.); оказаться, to turn out; оставаться, to remain; являться, to be; etc.

2.2.4. Attributes

A noun anywhere in the sentence—whether part of the subject or the object—can be extended by an attribute (определение) answering the question какой?
which/what? Examples: Вчера приехал старший брат (part of the subject),
Yesterday the older brother came, Мы любим русскую литературу, We love
Russian literature (part of the object).

Attributes may also answer the questions чей? whose? In the sentence
Мой старший брат приехал вчера, My elder brother arrived yesterday; the
subject is extended by the adjectival modifier старший, which answers the
question какой? which/what?, and also by the possessive modifier мой, which
answers the question чей? whose?

Keep in mind that adverbial modifiers modify verbs and adjectives, while
attributes modify nouns.

If the attribute agrees in gender and number with the noun it modifies, it is
known as a coordinated modifier (согласованное определение). Four differ-
ent parts of speech may function as coordinated attributes in Russian:

a) Adjective (прилагательное). Adding an adjective is a very common way
of modifying nouns. Here are two examples: Вёет мёдный ветерок, A
warm breeze is blowing; Пришла бедная старушка, A poor old woman
came. Adjectives in Russian agree with the noun they modify in case, num-
ber and gender.

b) Participle (причастие). A participle is a verb used as an adjective to mod-
ify a noun. Here is an example of a sentence with a past passive participial
modifier: Отовсюду слышались вззволнованные голоса, Everywhere
could be heard worried voices. Like adjectives, participles agree with the
noun they modify in case, number and gender.

c) Pronoun (местоимение). A number of different types of pronouns func-
tion as coordinated modifiers in Russian. One is the possessive pronoun
(притяжательное местоимение). First and second person possessive pro-
nouns—мой, my; наш, our; твой, ваш, your—agree in case, number and
gender with the noun they modify: Вам нравится наша страна? Do you
like our country? Я люблю ваш город, I love your city. Third person
possessive pronouns—его, his, its; её, her; их, their—however, do not agree
in case, number, or gender with the noun they modify.

A demonstrative pronoun (указательное местоимение) is another type of
pronoun that agrees in case, number, and gender with the noun it modifies: Он
читает эту книгу, He is reading that book.

d) Number (числительное). A number may also modify a noun, as in the fol-
lowing sentence: Наступил первый день нового года, The first day of the
new year has arrived. A number used as an adjectival modifier is known as an
ordinal number (порядковое числительное).

Coordinated attributes in Russian exhibit concord, or agreement (согла-
сование), with the noun they modify; that is, they agree in number, gender and
case with that noun. For example, in the noun phrase тёплым днём, on a warm day, both words—the head noun as well as its modifier—are masculine singular and appear in the instrumental case.

In English only a few pronouns exhibit concord. One group is the demonstrative pronouns this/these, that/those, which exhibit number concord: this book (singular) vs. these books (plural).

Even in Russian not all attributes agree with the noun they modify. An attribute that exhibits no concord with its head noun is called a non-coordinated attribute (несогласованное определение). Russian has several types of non-coordinated modifiers.

e) Third person possessive pronoun (притяжательное местоимение третьего лица: егó, his, its; еë, her, их, their).

1. Я восхищаюсь егó книгами. (Чьи́ми кни́гами?)
   I am delighted with his books. (With whose books?)

2. Ты взял еë деньги.
   Did you take her money. (Whose money?)

3. Мы посмотрели их работу.
   We looked at their work. (Whose work?)

f) Prepositional phrase (предложная конструкция): Look at the following sentence: Вошла женщина в дорогой шубе, A woman in an expensive fur coat entered. In this sentence, the prepositional phrase в дорогой шубе answers the question какой человек? what person? and is thus an attribute. But since the endings of the words in the phrase в дорогой шубе do not agree with человек, this attribute is non-coordinated.

g) A noun phrase in a case other than nominative (without a preposition). Look at the following sentence: Брат твоего дру́га прие́хал, Your friend's brother arrived. In this sentence, the phrase твоего дру́га is a modifier because it answers the question чей? whose? Because the words твоего дру́га do not agree with the modified word брат, they represent a non-coordinated attribute. Here is another example of a non-coordinated attribute consisting of a number:

Вошёл человек лет тридцати. (Какой человек?)
A man of about thirty entered. (What kind of a person?)

h) Adverbs modifying nouns. Here are some examples of adverbs used to extend a noun phrase:

1. Прогу́лка пешком полезна. (Какая прогулка?)
   A stroll on foot is useful. (What kind of a stroll?)

2. Езда верхом приятна. (Какая езда?)
   Riding horseback is pleasant. (What kind of riding?)
i) **Infinitives modifying nouns.** Infinitives may also be used to extend a noun phrase. Since they can never take endings, an infinitive is by definition a type of non-coordinated modifier.

1. Желание бежать одолело его.  (Какое желание?)
   A desire to flee overcame him.  (What kind of desire?)

2. Он имеет привычку молчать.  (Какую привычку?)
   He has the habit of keeping quiet.  (What kind of habit?)

In conclusion we can say that modifiers occur in a wide range of different forms. Some modifiers are coordinated and agree in number, gender and case with the noun they modify. Others are non-coordinated: their form remains the same regardless of whether they modify a masculine, feminine, neuter or plural noun. Some modify the subject noun; others modify nouns in the predicate. But all modifiers, regardless of their grammatical form, are alike in one way: they answer the question какий? which? or чей? whose? In other words, all modifiers are secondary sentence elements because they serve to extend a noun in either the subject or predicate.

2.2.5. **Appositives**

An appositive (приложение) is yet another type of attribute. Appositives are nouns that modify other nouns in a sentence. Generally, an appositive appears in the same gender, number and case as the noun it modifies and is thus a coordinated modifier (instances of non-coordinated appositives will be mentioned below). The sentence below contains three appositives (the head nouns are italicized and the appositives underlined):

1. Иван-царевич взял скаперт-самобра́нку и шапка-невидимку.  
   Ivan Tsarevich took the magic tablecloth and the invisible hat.

**Note:** The last two appositives correspond to simple adjectives in the English translation. (From now on we will generally limit the use of the underline and boldface type to the Russian examples and omit them from the English translation.)

There are several types of appositives in Russian.

a) **Appositives modifying human names.** Human names are often accompanied by common nouns denoting profession, social status, or some family relation; these common nouns are examples of appositives. In such cases, both the proper name and the appositive appear in the same case (in other words, they are coordinated).
b) **Appositives modifying geographic names.** Geographic proper nouns often serve as appositives accompanying common nouns such as город, city; озеро, lake; залив, strait, etc.

1. **Чёрез два дня туріїсты отправляются к озеру Байкал.**
   In two days the tourists will leave for Lake Baikal.

2. **Город Волгоград находится на реке Волге.**
   The city of Volgograd is located on the Volga River.

3. **У меня остались сёмье приятные впечатлени на о городе Москве.**
   I was left with an excellent impression of Moscow.

**Note:** Unlike appositives consisting of human names, geographic appositives are generally non-coordinated. For instance, appositives with nouns such as остров, island; полуостров, peninsula; озеро, lake; гора, mountain; залив, sound, пролив, strait; станция, station, are not declined: на острове Сахалин, on Sakhalin Island; на полуострове Камчатка, on Kamchatka Peninsula; на озере Байкал, on Lake Baikal; на горе Казбек, on Mount Kazbek, etc. Only appositives accompanying the nouns город, city; деревня, village река, river can be coordinated in some styles of writing. Examples: в городе Новосибирске, in Novosibirsk; в деревне Екатериновке, in the village of Yekaterinovka; на реке Волге, on the Volga River, etc. (Indeclinable nouns, of course, are non-coordinated by default: под городом Ровно, near the city Rovno; в городе Бордо, in Bordeaux; в городе Хельсинки, in Helsinki, etc.). However, in official style, military writing, as well as in scientific literature dealing with geography, geographic appositives are not declined even after город, city; деревня, village; река, river: в городе Новосибирск, in Novosibirsk; на реке Волга, on the Volga River, etc.
c) **Appositives modifying common nouns.** Appositives modifying common nouns are invariably coordinated. In other words, both noun and appositive must be in the same case.

1. Ленинград стал городом-героем.
   *Leningrad became a hero city.*

2. Ленинград — город-герой.
   *Leningrad is a hero city.*

d) **Titles as appositives.** The titles of works of art, literature, newspapers, magazines, etc., are appositives if introduced by a common noun such as роман, *the novel; газета, the newspaper,* etc. Titles used as appositives are non-coordinated. In other words, the introductory noun changes case, but the words in the titles themselves do not. If the common noun is removed, the title is no longer an appositive and the noun (or nouns) in the title declines.

1. Вы читали роман «Анна Каренина»? (non-coordinated appositive)
   *Have you read the novel Anna Karenina?*
   (Compare: Вы читали «Анну Каренину»?) (coordinated object)
   *Have you read Anna Karenina?*

2. В газете «Правда» напечатана интересная статья. (non-coord.)
   *An interesting article is printed in the newspaper Pravda.*
   (Compare: В «Правде» напечатана интересная статья.) (coord.)
   *An interesting article is printed in Pravda.*

**Exercise 2.1**

Identify the italicized item as: predicate nominal, adverbial modifier, object complement, coordinated attribute, non-coordinated attribute, or appositive. Tell if it extends the subject or predicate.

1. В лесу весело пели птицы.
   *Birds sang cheerfully in the forest.*

2. Огромные, лиловые тучи поднимались из-за леса.
   *Enormous violet clouds rose above the forest.*

3. Наши дети любят борщ со сметаной.
   *Our kids love borsch with sour cream.*

4. Побеждённые игроки устали и шли к выходу.
   *The defeated players walked wearily toward the exit.*

5. По Москве-реке шёл небольшой теплоход.
   *A small vessel travelled down the Moscow River.*

6. Мой отец был директором школы.
   *My father was the school principal.*
7. Царевич Дмитрий был убит в Уglich.
The Tsarevich Dmitry was killed in Uglich.

8. Петея опять потерял свой варежки.
Petya lost his mittens again.

9. На однок из перекрестков города произошла серьезная авария.
A serious accident occurred at one of the city's intersections.

10. Второй человек был отдан в кожаное пальто.
The second person was dressed in a leather coat.

2.3. Detached Secondary Elements in a Sentence

Adverbial modifiers, attributes, appositives or objects set off from the rest of
the sentence by special intonation are known as detached secondary elements
(обособленные члены предложения). Examples:

a) Detached adverbial modifier (обособленное обстоятельство)

1. Несмотря на все моих стараний, я никак не мог заснуть.
Despite all my efforts, I couldn’t fall asleep.

2. Мы спустились с берега к воде, цепляясь за кустарник и сухую траву.
We descended the bank to the water, keeping our balance by grasping small
bushes and dry grass.

b) Detached attribute (обособленное определение)

1. Синий вечер отражался в лужах, затянутых тонким ледком.
The blue evening was reflected in puddles covered with thin ice.

2. Ветер, дувший с моря, начал усилеваться.
The wind blowing from the sea began to get stronger.

c) Detached appositive (обособленное приложение)

1. Дома Климова встретила сестра Катя, семилетняя девочка.
At home Klimov was met by his sister Katya, a 7-year old girl.

2. Заяц, маленькое и слабое животное, боится всего.
The rabbit, a small and weak animal, fears everything.

d) Detached object (обособленное дополнение)

1. За исключением Новгорода, татары покоряли все города Руси.
With the exception of Novgorod, the Tatars subdued all the cities of Rus'.

2. Кроме детей и инвалидов, всех взяли на работу в поле.
Except for children and invalids, they took everyone to work in the field.
Remember that all four types of detached secondary elements are set off in speech by a special intonational pause. (And, as we will discuss in Chapter 7, they are set off in writing with commas.)

2.4. Formally Unconnected Words in a Sentence

A sentence may also contain words that neither modify any particular sentence element nor are modified by any other element. Formally unconnected words in a sentence fall into several groups: words spoken as vocatives (обращения); the words да, yes; and нет, no, appearing within a sentence; and interjections (междомётия). These types of formally unconnected words are known as inserted elements (вставные конструкции). A fourth group contains parenthetical words (вводные слова). Here are examples of each group:

a) Vocatives (words spoken in direct address) (обращения)

1. Дорогие друзья, хочу поблагодарить вас от всей души.
   Dear friends, I want to thank you with all my heart.

2. — Послушай, слепой,— сказал Янко,— ты береги то место… (Л.).
   “Listen, blind one,” said Yanko, “you guard that place…”

b) “Yes” and “no” (Да и нет)

1. Нет, я ошибся.
   No, I’m mistaken.

2. Да, всё готово.
   Yes, everything is ready.

c) Interjections (междомётия) are particles that convey the speaker’s emotional state. Here are two examples:

1. Ох, как я устала!
   Oh, how tired I am!

2. Ой, я забыл свой портфель.
   Oops, I forgot my briefcase.

d) Parenthetical words (вводные слова)

There are a large number of parenthetical words in Russian (as in English). Generally, they appear in a sentence to clarify the speaker’s attitude toward the utterance as a whole. Here are a few examples:

1. Он, по-видимому, не понял вашего ответа.
   Apparently, he didn’t understand your answer.

2. А я, видите ли, никогда не служил.
   But I, you see, never served.
As you can see, parenthetical words express the speaker’s attitude to the information being conveyed. But what exactly do such words express? In the first sentence above, the phrase по-видимому, *it would seem*, expresses the speaker’s suspicion that the event described is true. In the second, the parenthetical phrase видите ли, *you see*, expresses the speaker’s desire to attract the listener’s attention and put him in an appropriate frame of mind to hear what is being said.

**Exercise 2.2**

Identify the italicized words as one of the following: 1) detached secondary elements (detached adverbial modifier, detached attribute, detached appositive, detached object); or 2) formally unconnected sentence elements (direct address, parenthetical words, interjection).

1. **Маша, передай соль.**
   *Masha, pass the salt.*

2. **Рыцарь, гордый и непобедимый, поскакал вперёд.**
   *The knight, proud and invincible, galloped ahead.*

3. **Ой, как жарко!**
   *Oh, how hot it is!*

4. **Кста́ми, у вас очень хороший русский язык.**
   *By the way, you have very good Russian.*

5. **Вы глубоко ошибаетесь, Геннадий Петрович.**
   *You are entirely wrong, Gennady Petrovich.*

6. **Отступи́в на́зад, он внимательно огляделся.**
   *Stepping back, he looked around attentively.*

7. **Хочу́ посмотреть́ Москву́, столи́цу России́.**
   *I want to see Moscow, the capital of Russia.*

8. **Помы́мо сво́их нау́чных достиже́ний, он ещё славится музыка́льным талан́том.**
   *In addition to his scholarly accomplishments, he is also renowned for his musical ability.*

9. **А он, мятёжный, прось́ит бури́... (Л.).**
   *But he, the rebellious one, seeks a tempest...*

10. **Вы, конечно, правы́.**
    *You’re right, of course.*
Chapter 3
The Complex Sentence

Sometimes one of the elements in an extended sentence is itself a sentence. Structurally, sentences of this kind are of two varieties. The first is the complex sentence (сложно подчинённое предложение), which contains another sentence as one of its grammatical elements. The second, known as the compound sentence (сложно сочинённое предложение), contains two or more sentences that are syntactically independent of one another. The Russian term сложное предложение refers generically to both compound and complex sentences.

Let us first discuss the complex sentence. A sentence is considered to be complex if one of its syntactic constituents is another sentence. The complex sentence consists of two parts: a main clause (главное предложение) and a subordinate, or dependent, clause (порядоточное предложение), which functions as an element within the structure of the main clause.

\[
\text{Note: In Chapter 7 you will learn that all subordinate clauses in Russian are set off from the main clause by commas. This is such an important difference between Russian and English that we thought we would mention it to you right here. In the rest of this section, pay attention to how the dependent clauses in the Russian examples are invariably set off by commas while those in the English translations usually are not.}
\]

Here is an example of a complex sentence with the subordinate clause given in italics:

\[
\text{Дети хотят, чтобы мама спела песню.} \\
\text{The kids want mother to sing a song.}
\]

In this sentence, the subordinate clause чтобы мама спела песню acts to extend the verb хотят; in other words, it answers the question Что дети хотят? What do the children want? The word чтобы, in order that, which connects the subordinate to the main clause, is known as the subordinate conjunction (подчинительный союз).

There are several groups of complex sentences. Each group is distinguished from the others by which main clause element the subordinate clause extends, and by what kind of information it adds to the main clause. Let’s take a look at the main types of complex sentences.
3.1. Complex Sentences with Explanatory Clauses

The sentence Дёти хотят, чтобы мама спела песню discussed above is an example of a complex sentence made by adding an explanatory clause (изъяснительная придаточная часть) as the object complement of the predicate. Below are more examples of complex sentences with explanatory clauses. The main clause normally contains a verb of perception, emotion or speaking and is followed by an explanatory clause introduced by the word что (that).

1. Я думаю, что Таня правá.
   I think that Tanya is correct.

2. Я рад, что ты пришлал.
   I’m glad that you came.

3. Дёти смотрели, как родители ссорились.
   The children watched the parents arguing (literally, … watched as…)

4. Мы удивились, что «Спартак» проиграл.
   We were amazed that “Spartak” lost.

Note: In English, explanatory clauses are often subordinated by the optional conjunction “that.” While English can optionally drop the conjunction “that,” the Russian что is obligatorily present. The sentence Я рад, что ты пришлал might be translated into English as I’m glad that you came, or as I’m glad you came, with no difference in meaning.

3.2. Complex Sentences with Attributive Clauses

Another type of complex sentence contains what is called an attributive, or relative, clause (определительная придаточная часть). Unlike the explanatory clause, which modifies a verb phrase, the relative clause modifies a noun or pronoun in the main clause; this word is called its antecedent (определённое слово). Here is an example of a complex sentence with an attributive clause:

Папа взял книгу, которая лежала на полу.
Papa took the book that lay on the floor.

In this sentence, the subordinate clause которая лежала на полу acts as an attribute of the noun книгу by answering the question Какую книгу папа взял? Here, the antecedent is the noun книгу, and the conjunctive word is the relative pronoun (относительное местоимение) которая, which links the subordinate clause to the main clause. Attributive clauses must directly follow their antecedent, even if they divide the main clause in half, as in the following examples. The order “antecedent+ relative” is identical to English.

1. Папа взял книгу, которая лежала на полу, и положил её на стол.
   Papa took the book that lay on the floor and put it on the table.
2. *Кни́га, кото́рый лежа́ла на полу́, тепе́рь сто́ит на полке*.
   *The book that lay on the floor is now standing on the shelf.*

   A subordinate clause may also modify a predicate nominal, as in the following sentences:

1. **Жаро́ така́я, что дыша́ть нечём.**
   *It’s so hot I can’t breathe (literally, that there’s nothing to breathe with).*

2. **Он то́т, кого́ никто́ не люби́т.**
   *He’s the one who no one likes.*

   The subordinate clause italicized in the first example modifies the predicate nominal **така́я**. (Remember, a *predicate nominal, именное сказуемое*, is a noun, pronoun, or adjective that follows a linking verb.) In the second example the clause **кого́ никто́ не люби́т** modifies the predicate nominal **то́т**.

   In complex sentences where the subordinate clause modifies a predicate nominal, the main clause often contains some form of the pronouns **то, тако́й, тако́в, тако́вой**, meaning *such or of the kind.*

1. **Это не то, что я ожида́л.**
   *That’s not what I expected.*

2. **Я тако́в, како́й есть.**
   *I am the way I am.*

3. **Они́ оказалы́сь таки́ми, каки́ми мы их се́бе представля́ли.**
   *They turned out just like we imagined.*

4. **Он не тако́в, что будет ждать до бесконе́чности.**
   *He’s not the type to wait forever.*

   If the predicate of the main clause is expressed by the pronoun **то́т, the one, the person**, the subordinate clause modifying it is joined with the help of a *conjunctive word* (со́юзное сло́во) such as **кто, кото́рый, како́й, чей, who, which, that, whose**, or the unstressed conjunction **что, that.**

   If the predicate of the main clause is expressed by the pronouns **тако́й, тако́в, such**, the subordinate clause modifying it is joined with the help of a conjunctive word such as **како́й, како́в, кото́рый, who, which, that, or the unstressed conjunctions что, that; or как, as.**

3.3. **Complex Sentences with Dependent Adverbial Clauses**

   A subordinate clause may extend the verb of the predicate by answering such questions as **Куда́? Where to? Где? Where at? Отку́да? From where? Как? How? Когда́? When? etc.** In such a sentence the subordinate clause functions as an adverbial phrase and is known as a *dependent adverbial clause* (придаточное предложение). Depending on the meaning of the conjunctive word that connects it to the main clause, adverbial modifiers can express time,
manner, place, purpose, cause, or concession. Below are examples of each type with the conjunctive word given in boldface type:

a) Adverbial clause of time (придаточное предложение времени)

Надо было это сделать тогда, когда ты был еще молодым.
You should have done that (at the time) when you were still young.

b) Adverbial clause of manner (придаточное предл. образа действия)

Он это сделал так, как я хотел.
He did it the way that I wanted.

c) Adverbial clause of place (придаточное предложение места)

Мы хотим жить там, где родились.
We want to live where we were born.

d) Adverbial clause of purpose (придаточное предложение причины)

Они сюда приехали, чтобы спастися.
They ran here to save themselves.

e) Adverbial clause of effect (придаточное предложение следствия)

Он обиделся, так как вы ему не звоните.
He became offended because you haven’t been calling him.

f) Adverbial clause of condition (придаточное предложение условия)

Я помогу тебе, если попросишь меня.
I will help you if you ask me.

g) Adverbial clause of concession (придаточное уступительное)

Студент сдал экзамен, хотя он совсем не готовился к нему.
The student passed the exam even though he didn’t study for it at all.

Note 1: In complex sentences of the type given above, the dependent adverbial clause can be inverted and preposed to the main clause:

1. Хотя мы долго готовились, мы не сдали экзамен.
   (= Мы не сдали экзамен, хотя мы долго готовились.)
   Although we studied a lot, we didn’t pass the exam.

2. Чтобы спастиься, они бросились в воду.
   (= Они бросились в воду, чтобы спастиься.)
   To save themselves they jumped into the water.
Note 2: Such inversion is not possible if the attributive clause modifies a particular word in the main clause. In such cases the dependent clause must always follow directly after the word it modifies.

1. Поля, которые находились за рекой, были затоплены водой.
The fields that were located beyond the river were flooded.
2. Мы погрузились на пароход, который только что пришел с Аляски.
We boarded a ferry that had just arrived from Alaska.

Note 3: The Russian что has several functions. In some it is stressed while in others it remains unstressed. The first two sentences below contain a stressed что; the third and fourth contain unstressed что:

1. Что он знает?
What does he know?
interrogative pronoun что
2. Признайся, что ты сделал!
Admit what you did!
conjunctive word что
3. Признайся, что ты это сделал.
Admit (that) you are the one who did it.
conjunction что
4. Так тепло, что хочется снять рубашку.
It's so warm (that) I feel like taking off my shirt.
conjunction что

The first example is a direct question and contains the interrogative pronoun (вопросительное местоимение) что, which is invariably stressed. The second example contains an indirect question expressed by a subordinate clause. Here, что serves as a conjunctive word (союзное слово) and is invariably stressed. The last two examples contain the unstressed conjunction (союз) что, corresponding to an optional “that” in English.

Note 4: Similarly, the word как may or may not be stressed depending upon its function in the sentence. If как fulfills the role of interrogative pronoun or conjunctive word, it is always stressed. The first example below contains the question word как; the second contains как used as a conjunctive word corresponding to the English “how”:

1. Как тебя зовут?
What’s your name? (lit., How do they call you?)
2. Мне нравится, как он избегает всех неудач.
I like how he avoids all manner of misfortune.

If, however, the word как does not correspond to the English “how” or “what,” but rather might best be translated with “as” or omitted entirely in English, then it is a conjunction and does not receive a word stress:

3. Она с улыбкой слушала, как весело щебетали птицы в саду.
With a smile she listened as the birds chirped merrily in the orchard.
With a smile she listened to the birds chirping merrily in the orchard.
Note 5: In Russian texts that have been accented for pedagogical purposes, stress on monosyllabic words is usually left unmarked. In this book, however, we have marked the stress on the interrogative pronouns and conjunctive words что and как to distinguish them from the unstressed conjunctions что and как. The word кто, who, is not marked for stress, since it is stressed in all of its functions.

Exercise 3.1

For each sentence below, form a question that corresponds to the role played by the subordinate clause. Each subordinate clause is italicized and the conjunction or conjunctive word connecting it to the main clause is given in italics.

Example: Невозможно, как мы смогли закончить всё это вовремя. It's not known how we were able to finish all this on time.

Answer: The subordinate clause как мы смогли... answers the question Что невозможно? What is not known?

1. Тот, что я прочитала в этой книге, надолго запомнилось мне. What I read (lit., that which I read) in this book I remembered a long time.
2. Дети знают, кто придет сегодня. The children know who is coming today.
3. Случилось то, что некая не могла ожидать. What happened we never could have expected.
4. Ясно, что каждый должен отвечать за свои поступки. It's clear (that) every person should answer for his actions.
5. Всё, что минуту назад казалось важным, потеряло всякий интерес. Everything that seemed important a moment ago lost all interest.
6. Ей показалось, что она испугалась чего-то. It seemed to her (that) he had become frightened of something.
7. Я услышал, как кто-то вошёл в прихожую. I heard someone come into the anteroom.
8. В письме сообщалось, что они скоро приедут. The letter said (that) they would soon come.
9. Всем известно, что он сделал это. Everyone knows (that) he did it.
10. Нам показалось, что она была взволнована. It seemed to us that she was agitated.
11. Наде чудилось, что вниз играют на скрипке. Nadya imagined that someone was playing the violin downstairs.
12. Долго было видно, как она стояла у края дороги (как = что).
   For a long time she could be seen standing by the edge of the road.
13. Удивительно, что он пришёл вовремя.
   It was amazing that he came on time.
14. Неизвестно, кто поедет на соревнования.
   It is not known who will go to the competition.
15. Всем понятно, что это займет много времени.
   Everyone understands that this will take a lot of time.
16. Мне неизвестно, как ему удалось заплатить за билет.
   I don’t know how he managed to pay for the ticket.
17. Нет ничего, что могло бы отвлечь её от тяжёлых мыслей.
   There is nothing that could distract her from her heavy thoughts.
18. То, что случилось, не изменить.
   You can’t change what happened.
19. Любой, кто обращался к ней за помощью, получал её.
   Anyone who came to her for help received it.
20. Тот, кто впервые приезжал в этот город, был поражён красотой парка.
   Whoever (the one who) came to that city for the first time was struck by the park’s beauty.
Chapter 4
The Compound Sentence

We have already discussed the complex sentence (сложноподчинённое предложение). Now let us turn to the other type of non-simple sentence, the compound sentence (сложносочинённое предложение). A compound sentence contains two or more sentences capable of standing on their own as simple sentences, but which are joined together by a coordinating conjunction such as и, and, or но, but. Before discussing the structure of compound sentences, we must first take a look at the types of conjunctions that create them out of simple sentences.

4.1. Single Conjunctions (Простые союзы)

Compound sentences use the same types of conjunctions found in simple sentences. These conjunctions may occur singly or in pairs.

A conjunction used singly is called a simple conjunction (простой союз). There are three types of simple conjunctions:

a) Copulative or coordinating conjunctions (соединительные союзы), such as и, and; да, and, simply combine two elements together:

1. Вилка и нож лежали на столе.
   A fork and knife lay on the table.

2. Муж и жена были согласны со мной.
   The husband and wife were in agreement with me.

3. Выда я пойдём туда. (да has a colloquial and often ironic flavor)
   You and I will go there.

b) Disjunctive conjunctions (разделительные союзы): или, or; либо, or, present a choice of items:

1. Принеси вилку или нож.
   Bring a fork or a knife.

2. Мы сделаем это сегодня либо завтра. (либо is more formal)
   We’ll do that today or tomorrow.

c) Contrastive conjunctions (противительные союзы): а, but, and, imply some contrast, unlike the copulative conjunctions given previously. The contrastive conjunction но, but, and not, however, implies a stronger con-
trast than a; finally, да, but also implies a strong contrast but with a note of irony and is used primarily in colloquial speech.

1. Я просил не вилку, а нож.
   I asked for a knife, not a fork.

2. Взломщики чаще пользуются ножами, но не вилками.
   Burglars more often use knives and not forks.

3. Я хотел ответить вам на письмо, да забыл ваш адрес.
   I wanted to answer your letter but forgot your address.

### 4.2. Repeating Conjunctions (Повторяющиеся союзы)

In addition to being used singly, copulative and disjunctive conjunctions can also occur in pairs (whereas the contrastive conjunctions а, and, but; но, but, are only used singly). In such cases they are called compound coordinating conjunctions (сложные сочинительные союзы). The following compound conjunctions are used in Russian:

#### a) Copulative or coordinating conjunctions (соединительные союзы):

- и ... и, both ... and; да ... да, both ... and (more colloquial); ни ... ни, neither ... nor.

1. Понадобились и вилка, и нож.
   A fork as well as a knife were needed.

2. Не понадобились ни вилка, ни нож.
   Neither fork nor knife was needed.

3. Пришли все мои родственники, да двое соседей, да еще пара друзей моего брата.
   All my relatives came, and two neighbors, and also a couple of my brother's friends.

#### b) Disjunctive conjunctions (разделительные союзы):

- или ... или, either ... or; либо ... либо, either ... or (more dry and formal); не то ... не то, either ... or (emphasizes the speaker's uncertainty); то ... то, now ... then (implies alternating action)

1. Принеси или вилку, или нож.
   Bring either a fork or a knife.

2. Они придут либо сегодня, либо завтра.
   They will come either today or tomorrow.

3. Погода была ужасная: шел не то дождь, не то снег.
   The weather was awful: it was either raining or snowing.

4. Огонёк то вспыхнет, то погаснет.
   The little fire would flare up and then die away.
5. Either he left already or went to take a walk.

4.3. Parallel Sentence Elements (Однородные члены предложения)

All of the conjunctions just discussed are used to join parallel items together. But what exactly is a "parallel item"? Sometimes more than one unit occupies the same structural slot in a sentence. We call units arranged in this way "parallel items" (однородные члены). For example, the sentence below contains two parallel adverbs of manner:

Люди работали спокойно и молча́льно.
People worked quietly and silently.

Since the adverbs спокойно и молча́льно modify the verb by answering the question Как работали? they are parallel sentence elements (однородные члены предложения, lit., homogenous members of the sentence). Any grammatical structure may occur in parallel form. Here are more examples:

a) Parallel subjects (однородные подлежащие) are two or more elements that serve as the subject of the same verb:

1. Ва́ня и Ма́ша шли домо́й.
   Vanya and Masha were walking home.

2. Серге́й, Оле́г и Ири́на окончили шко́лу в прошлом году́.
   Sergei, Oleg and Irina graduated from school last year.

b) Parallel direct objects (однородные прямые дополнения) are two or more elements that fulfill the role of direct object of the same verb:

1. Бабушка купи́ла капусты и сметаны.
   Grandmother bought some cabbage and sour cream.

2. А. С. Пу́шкин пишал прозу и поэ́зию.
   A. S. Pushkin wrote prose and poetry.

c) Parallel indirect objects (однородные косвенны́е дополнения) are two or more elements that act as an indirect object of the same verb or preposition:

1. Он всегда́ помога́л родите́лям, бра́ту и сестре́.
   He always helped his parents, brother(,) and sister.

2. Тума́н оку́тал деревья́ и дома́.
   Fog enveloped the trees and houses.

d) Parallel predicates (однородные сказуемые) are two or more verbs with a single subject:
1. Óльга въшла на улицу и почти тотчас вернулась.
   Olga went outside and came back almost immediately.

2. Я спросил его, но не получил ответа.
   I asked him but received no answer.

4.4. Generalizing Words with Parallel Sentence Elements

A generalizing word (объясняющее слово) is used to refer to several parallel sentence elements simultaneously, such as the word всё, everything, in the sentence below:

1. В человёке всё должно быть прекрасно: и лицо, и одёжа, и душа, и мысли (Чёхов).
   Everything about a person should be beautiful: face, clothing, soul, and thoughts.

The words face, clothing, soul, and thoughts are parallel subjects; the generalizing word всё, everything, also fulfills the role of subject. Here is another example:

2. В степи, за рекой, по дорожкам — вездё было пусто.
   In the steppe, beyond the river, along the roads—everywhere there was desolation.

Here, the word вездё, everywhere, is an adverb of place used to sum up several parallel adverbs of place: in the steppe, beyond the river, along the roads.

The following adverbs and pronouns are most often used as generalizing words: всё, everything; все, everyone; никто, no one; ничегó, nothing; вездё, всёду, everywhere; нигде, никуда, nowhere; всегда, always; никогда, never.

Sometimes, other combinations of words may serve to generalize a series of parallel elements, as in the following example:

3. В этом месте найдены цветные металлы: медь, цинк, марганец.
   In this place people have found non-ferrous metals: copper, zinc, and manganese.

   It would be possible to express the same idea without a generalizing word:

4. В этом месте найдены: медь, цинк, марганец.
   In this place people have found copper, zinc and manganese.

4.5. Parallel Sentences (Однородные предложения)

We mentioned above that simple sentences like Шумели деревья, The trees were rustling, and Над нами по небу мчались кольчий туч, Above us shreds of cloud raced across the sky, can be joined to form a compound sentence by adding the conjunction и, and: Шумели деревья, и над нами по небу мчались кольчий туч, The trees rustled and above us shreds of cloud raced across the sky.
Here are more examples of compound sentences with coordinating conjunctions:

1. Нéбо покры́лось тúчами, и чéрез нéкоторое врéмя полýл дождь.
   The sky became covered with clouds and in a while rain began pouring.

2. И líл дождь, и гремéл гром.
   Both rain poured and thunder rumbled.

3. Лíл дождь, но мы продолжáли рабóтать.
   It was pouring rain, but we continued to work.

Conjunctions such as и, and; но, but, create parallel items out of entire sentences. A compound sentence could be divided into independent simple sentences: Нéбо покры́лось тúчами, The sky became covered with clouds; and, Чéрез нéкоторое врéмя полýл дождь, In a while rain began pouring.

Exercise 4.1

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate coordinating conjunction: ёсли (or), и (and); а (and yet, but), но, (but), но однáко (but still), однáко (however), однáко же (but), всé же (and yet); да (a colloquial conjunction meaning и, and; or но, but).

1. Доро́гу занесло сильнó снёгом, ________ мы заблудíлись.
   The road was quite covered with snow and we lost our way.

2. Стемнéло, ________ стáло хóлодно.
   It got dark and turned cold.

3. Дождá нет, ________ хóлодно.
   There's no rain, but it's cold.

4. Во́здух дьшит ве́сéнним аромáтом, ________ вся прирóда оживля́ется.
   The air exudes the aroma of spring and all nature comes alive.

5. Нéбо было пáсмурно, ________ дождá ужé né было.
   The sky was overcast but it was no longer raining.

6. Это было́ её подруга, ________ я её́ сразу не узнала.
   That was her friend, and yet I didn't recognize her right away.

7. Ему́ было всё равно, ________ он не хотéл покáзывать своéго разочаровáния.
   He didn't care or he didn't want to show his disappointment.

8. Зверь пóчью не подходи́л к зими́вью, ________ вéтер сравнёл её слéды на снегé.
   The animal didn't come up to the cabin at night or the wind covered up its tracks in the snow.

9. Чéрез час мы уже́ были до́ма, ________ мо́й сестрá оста́лась на вокза́ле.
   In an hour we were home, but my sister was still at the station.
10. Он заговорил, _______ голос его показался мне знакомым.
   He began to speak and his voice seemed familiar to me.

11. Эта книга выдержала десятки изданий, _______ интерес к ней не ослабевает.
   This book has gone through dozens of editions but interest in it is not waning.

12. Изредка слышались шаги, _______ вдруг кто-то стучал в окно.
   From time to time footsteps could be heard, or suddenly someone would knock on the window.

13. Результаты опытов были ошеломляющими, _______ я просто не был готов к таким результатам.
   The results of the experiment were astounding or I simply wasn’t ready for such results.

14. Море еще гремело, _______ ветер уже стихал.
   The sea still roared but the wind was already dying down.

15. Пришла весна, _______ сад наполнился шебетанием птиц.
   Spring arrived and the garden filled with the chattering of birds.
Chapter 5
Overview of Sentence Types

Below is an overview of the sentence types discussed so far, with additional examples and comments:

a) A **simple non-extended sentence** (простое нераспространённое предложение) has a single subject and a single predicate, neither of which are modified by any secondary sentence elements. Example: Они ушли, They left.

b) A **simple extended sentence** (простое распространённое предложение) has a single subject and a single predicate, at least one of which is modified by a secondary sentence element:

1. **Перелётные птицы улетели.**
   The migratory birds have departed.

2. **Дети пошли домой.**
   The children went home.

c) A **complex sentence** (сложноподчинённое предложение) contains another sentence (called the subordinate clause) as one of its constituent elements. The subordinate clause is usually joined to the main clause by a subordinating conjunction or conjunctive word:

1. **Я знаю, что вы любите русский язык.**
   I know (that) you love Russian.

2. **Не знаю, что и думать об этом.**
   I don't even know what to think about that.

3. **Толпа смотрела, как водители спорили.**
   The crowd watched the drivers arguing.

d) A **compound sentence** (сложнсочинённое предложение) is composed of two or more simple sentences connected together. These sentences may be joined by a coordinating conjunction such as и, and; или, or; но, but, or they may be joined asyndetically, that is, without a coordination conjunction, as in the following examples:
1. Вы любите Москву, и я люблю Москву. (syndetic construction)
   You love Moscow and I love Moscow.

2. Вы любите Москву, я люблю Москву. (asyndetic construction)
   You love Moscow; I love Moscow.

In Chapter 8 you will learn that the presence or absence of a conjunction (asynedeton) in a compound sentence does not affect punctuation in Russian, even though it does in English.

e) A compound-complex sentence (сложное предложение с сочинением и подчинением) is a compound sentence, at least one part of which contains a subordinate clause:

Я знаю, что вы любите Москву, и вы знаете, что я люблю Москву.
I know you love Moscow and you know I love Moscow.

Finally, there are two more sentence types found in Russian:

f) An impersonal sentence (безличное предложение) has no subject, such as Темнеет, It’s getting dark. Russian impersonal sentences are often translated into English as simple sentences with a dummy “it” as the subject.

g) An elliptic sentence (эллиптическое предложение) lacks some basic sentence element. The omitted element may be either the subject or the predicate and can usually be inferred from context. Elliptic sentences without a subject differ from impersonal sentences in that it is possible to return the subject to the elliptic sentence, whereas the impersonal sentence has no grammatical subject at all. In each example below the italicized sentence is elliptic:

1. Куда ты идешь? Домой.
   Where are you going? Home. (= I’m going home.)

2. Кто идет домой? Петья.
   Who’s going home? Petya. (= Petya is going home.)

3. О чём думаете? О каникулах.
   Whatcha thinkin’ about? ’Bout vacation. (= I’m thinking about vacation.)

4. Что он купил? Новую машину.
   What did he buy? A new car. (= He bought a new car.)

In the fourth example above, notice that the accusative ending on the noun in the elliptic sentence машину, car, reveals its role as direct object. The fact that nearly every Russian word contains an ending marking its grammatical function makes elliptic sentences in Russian generally less ambiguous than their English counterparts.
Exercise 5.1

Identify each sentence as belonging to one of the following structural types: simple non-extended, simple extended, complex, compound, compound complex, elliptic, impersonal.

1. Мыша сказала, что он идет на концерт.
   Misha said that he was going to the concert.

2. Мыша спрашивает, и я отвечу.
   Misha asks and I answer.

3. Каких животных ты видел в зоопарке? Жирафа и льва.
   What animals did you see at the zoo? A giraffe and a lion.

4. Дети любят кататься на санках.
   Kids love to go sledding.

5. Родители хотят, чтобы их дети хорошо учились.
   Parents want their kids to study well.

6. Я уверен, что ты честна, и ты также уверена, что я честен.
   I am sure that you are honest and you are sure that I am honest.

7. На деревьях сидели большие, чёрные птицы.
   Big black birds sat in the trees.

8. Охотник подошел ближе, и олень убежал.
   The hunter came closer and the deer ran away.

9. Дождь перестал.
   The rain stopped.

10. Здесь скучно.
    It's boring here.

11. Или я ошибся, или он преступник.
    Either I am mistaken or he's the criminal.

Now that you are acquainted with the basic categories and terminology of Russian syntax, you are ready to begin the actual study of Russian punctuation. Advanced students of Russian who wish to acquire a more in-depth knowledge of Russian sentence structure should consult the most recent edition of the following two books, put out by Russkii Iazyk Publishers in Moscow: Exercises in Russian Syntax: The Simple Sentence, and Exercises in Russian Syntax: The Complex Sentence. Although these books do not discuss punctuation specifically, they provide numerous examples of diverse sentence structures that show the correct punctuation.
Part Two. Punctuation

Chapter 6

Beginning and End Punctuation

The symbols used to mark the beginning and end of sentences in Russian resemble English in most respects. If you know how to set off English sentences you can generally apply the same principles to Russian. You will find that no other aspect of punctuation is so predictable. Still, there are some notable differences in the use of beginning and end punctuation between the two languages.

6.1. The Capital Letter

Knowing English, you probably assume that a capital letter (заглавная, or прописная, буква) likewise marks the beginning of a sentence in Russian. And you are perfectly right! In fact, almost every European language capitalizes the first letter of the first word in a sentence (the only exception being Georgian, which has no distinction between lower and upper case letters in the same style of writing).

Perhaps you have never thought about it before, but the capital letter you use to begin a sentence is actually a device of punctuation. This capital letter works together with the period, question mark, exclamation point, and points of omission (the three dots) to set off one sentence from another—a function that very much falls within the domain of punctuation.

Here are some examples:

1. Осень. Прозрачное утро. Небо как будто в тумане.
   Autumn. A clear morning. The sky seems enveloped in fog.

   And who are they? Russians? Americans? I don't know.

3. Вон отсюда! Сгинь!
   Out of here! Scram!

4. Не могу... Не могу...
   I can’t... I can’t...

   Sometimes, the capital letter used as a mark of punctuation can appear inside a sentence. This is true of sentences that contain quotations of direct speech. Here are some examples:
6.2. End Punctuation

1. Елена посмотрела на него гневно и сказала: «Прекрати немедленно!»
   Yelena looked at him angrily and said, “Stop that immediately!”

2. Потом он спросил меня: «Кто вы?»
   Then he asked me, “Who are you?”

   In such cases it must be understood that the quotation is actually an independent sentence that has been incorporated into the structure of the reporting sentence. In other words, sentences that contain quoted material represent a special type of complex sentence. The capital letters used to begin the quoted words Прекрати and Кто are marks of punctuation, as are the capital letters in the words Елена and Потом.

   There is little else to say about capital letters used as marks of punctuation. It should be mentioned, however, that the capital letter is also used as a spelling device, as well as to begin each line of verse in a poem; in such cases, it is not a mark of punctuation. These and other non-punctuational uses of the capital letter are discussed in Part Three of this book along with non-punctuational uses of the period, comma, and several other symbols.

6.2. End Punctuation

Every Russian sentence must end in one of four marks: the period (точка), the question mark (вопросительный знак), the exclamation point (восклицательный знак), or the points of omission (многоточие). These are the only marks of punctuation that signal the end of a sentence, though sentences can also end in a closing quote (see examples 1 and 2 above).

   The choice of end punctuation depends mainly upon the sentence’s intonation and communicative function (see Part One for a discussion of Russian sentence types).

6.2.1. The Period Used to End a Declarative Sentence

If a sentence makes a statement and is intended to be read with neutral intonation, then it ends in a period (точка). Here are some examples:

1. Вблизи двери сидел большой черный кот.
   Beside the door sat a big black cat.

2. По небу расстилались серо-голубые тучи.
   Grayish-blue clouds spread out across the sky.

3. Иван Петрович приехал из Крыма.
   Ivan Petrovich arrived from the Crimea.

   As in English, most Russian sentences end in a period.
Note: Sometimes a complete sentence will be followed by phrases that round out its meaning. These phrases are often punctuated as if they are separate sentences:

Многие участвовали в работе. В основном студенты филфака. И многие профессора. И еще несколько стажеров-иностранных.

A lot of people participated in the work. Mainly students from the language department. And many of the professors. And also a few foreign students.

The period also has a few non-punctuational uses; for instance, it may be used as a spelling device in certain abbreviations. These functions are discussed more fully in Part Three.

Note: If an abbreviation ending in a period happens to come at the end of a sentence, then a single mark functions simultaneously as both spelling device and end punctuation. In the example below, the abbreviation и др. (и другие), which corresponds to the English abbreviation etc., comes at the end of a sentence:

Цитрусовые деревья — это плодовые деревья, к которым относятся лимон, апельсин, мандарин и др.

Citrus trees are a group of fruit trees that includes the lemon, orange, tangerine, etc.

This rule applies in Russian and English.

6.2.2. The Question Mark Used to End an Interrogative Sentence

If a sentence is a question, then a question mark (вопросительный знак) stands at the end. And a capital letter marks the beginning of a question sentence. Here are some examples:

1. Они приехали?
   Have they arrived?

2. У тебя есть время?
   Do you have any time?

3. Который сейчас час?
   What time is it?

There is nothing more to say about the question mark except that it is more important in Russian than English. In Russian, as we have seen, declarative and interrogative sentences often share the same word order and thus are identical in print except for the presence of a question mark instead of a period. Examples:
6.2. END PUNCTUATION

Statement:  Question:
1. Они́ ёдут в го́род.  Они́ ёдут в го́род?
   They’re going to town.  Are they going to town?
2. Ольга напи́сала письмо́.  Ольга напи́сала письмо́?
   Olga wrote a letter.  Did Olga write a letter?

Of course, statements and questions in spoken Russian are easily distinguished by intonation. In writing, the end punctuation alone signals this difference in communicative function.

6.2.3. The Exclamation Point

Here again the role of intonation in speech is compensated for in writing by a mark of punctuation. If a declarative or imperative sentence is intended to be read in a heightened tone of voice, it should end in an exclamation point (восклица́тельный знак) rather than a period. This mark of punctuation may convey a high degree of any emotion—anger, joy, surprise, passion, hatred, etc. Below are examples of sentences spoken with some intense emotion and closed with the appropriate end mark, the exclamation point:

1. Кака́я замечательная погода́!
   What wonderful weather!
2. Уберись отсю́да немедленно!
   Get out of here immediately!
3. Она́ так отврати́тель но поёт!
   Her singing is so awful!
4. Ка́к прекрасен э́тот мир!
   How wonderful the world is!
5. Что́ за делá! Я не желаю́ бо́льше ждать!
   What’s the hold up! I don’t want to wait any longer!
6. Ва́ся! Иди́ сюда́ немедленно!
   Vasya! Come here this instant!

In the last example above, the exclamation point indicates that the vocative sentence is spoken with special forcefulness.

Note: As regards the exclamation point used in direct address, Russian exhibits another usage not predictable from English: the exclamation point may follow the salutation at the beginning of a letter, regardless of whether the letter is formal or informal:

1. Дорога́я ма́ма!
   Dear Mom,
2. Уважа́емый Никола́й Никола́евич!
   Dear Nikolai Nikolaevich:
The use of an exclamation point in this context would be unusual for English, which normally places a comma after the initial salutation in an informal letter, and a colon in a formal letter. Russian uses the exclamation point in all styles, although the comma (and colon in modern business letters) is also possible.

As in English, the exclamation point should be used sparingly. The dry, indifferent period usually comes much nearer to achieving a balance between author and reader. Save the exclamation point for special occasions.

6.2.4. Combinations of Question Mark + Exclamation Point

A question that should be read emphatically can be ended with a combination of question mark followed by exclamation point. Such sentences are always intended to be read with heightened intonation. Here are some examples:

1. Ну как тут можно оставаться равнодушным?!
   Well, how can you not care in such a situation?!

2. Да разве можно всех их перечесть?!
   But how can anyone name them all?!

3. Неужели я могу с тобой состязаться?!
   You mean I actually can compete with you?!

This double mark is only used if the author specifically wishes to emphasize that a question is accompanied by some strong emotion; it is not particularly common in Russian or English.

**Note:** Exclamatory or interrogative sentences, as well as sentences that are both exclamatory and interrogative, sometimes include elements pronounced with their own separate intonation curves. In such cases, modern Russian punctuates each element as if it were an entire sentence, beginning it with a capital letter and ending it with an exclamation point, question mark, or combination of the two marks:

1. Вот кофточки. Какого цвета хотите? Красную? Белую? Желтую?
   Here are the sweaters. What color do you want? Red? White? Yellow?

2. А что народ потерял?! Надеюсь! Вери! Жизнь!
   And what have the people lost?! Hope! Faith! Life!

3. А ты за кого меня принимаешь?! Богача?! Миллионера?!
   Who do you take me for?! A rich man?! A millionaire?!

In reading the classics of Russian literature, you may notice that writers formerly did not begin each separate element in such sentences with a capital letter, so that the exclamation point or question mark really did come in the middle of the sentence. Here are two examples, the first from the writing of Maxim Gorky, the second from Pushkin:
1. Всё отвергнул: законы! сознайте! веру!
   *He rejected everything: Laws! Conscience! Faith!*

2. Чего мне делать? просить прощения? хорошо, да в чём?
   *What should I do? Ask forgiveness? Fine, but for what?*

6.2.5. The Points of Omission, or Three Dots

The **points of omission** (многоточие), stand at the end of a sentence to signify that an utterance has been left unfinished. Here are some examples:

1. Он долго размышлял, идти или нет. И он пошёл…
   *He spent a long time thinking about whether or not to go. And he went…*

2. Мы встретились, разговорились…
   *We met and got to talking…*

3. Это совсем не так…
   *That’s not how it is at all…*

4. Я чувствую себя одинокой, и в эти последние дни особенно не хватает друзей…
   *I feel lonely and lately I feel particularly bereft of friends…*

   An author can use the points of omission to signal that the reader must think (or guess) about what comes next.

   **Note:** The points of omission can also follow a question mark or an exclamation point, in which case only two rather than three dots are used, as in this example taken from a dialog written by Soviet writer Mikhail Sholokhov:

   — Ну что? Как дела?...
   *“Well? How’s it going?…”*  
   — Плохо… Беда!...
   *“Bad… Real bad!…”*  
   — Чего? Говори живее!
   *“What? Get to the point!”*

6.3. End Marks of Punctuation inside the Sentence

We have already seen that the capital letter used as a mark of punctuation sometimes appears inside the sentence rather than at the absolute beginning. Under certain circumstances, a mark of end punctuation may likewise occur inside the sentence. The points of omission occur internally more often than the other marks.

6.3.1. The Points of Omission Used Internally

In the middle of a sentence the points of omission have the same function as at the end: they signify that something has been left out. Sometimes the omission signifies a thoughtful pause on the part of the speaker. A writer may make de-
liberate use of this device as an inducement to the reader to fill in the details, as in the example below:

«Русский народ добр и любит доброе, широк в жизненном размахе…
вынослив в борьбе, отважен и дерзок в игре со смертью; он умен и талантлив… Он способен совершить чудо…»

“The Russians are kind and love goodness, take life in a broad sweep… they are tenacious in battle, brave and impetuous in the game with death; they are clever and talented… They are capable of working miracles…”

This example is taken from the writing of Aleksei Tolstoy. The points of omission signify that the speaker is pausing during his thoughts as if thinking of more to say, more qualities to add. The punctuation indicates that something must be added to complete each thought.

When rendering quoted material, the points of omission may be used at the beginning or in the middle of a quotation to signify that it has been intentionally shortened.

Поп уже подходил к концу молитвы: «… и во веки веков. Аминь».

The priest was already finishing the prayer: “… forever and ever. Amen.”

Finally, the points of omission may signal an interrupted action or a shift of focus, as in the example below:

«Хлынули потоки дождя… запрыгал угловатый град… крутились,
выходят… мечутся деревья, столпились тучи… Молния! Ждешь удара…
Загрохотал и прокатился гром. Сильнее дождь…»

“Streams of rain gushed forth… irregular balls of hail began to bounce around…
the trees bend…twist; clouds crowd the sky… Lightning! You wait for the blast… Thunder roars and rolls across the sky. The rain falls harder…”

In this example the points of omission used internally convey that the attention given to each event is interrupted by the occurrence of a new event.

**Note:** The points of omission, when used to shorten a quotation that already contains points of omission, must be placed in angle brackets (уголёвые скобки):

Л. Н. Толстой однажды писал следующее о своёй жене: «Она не может отречься от своего чувства [...]. У неё, как у всех женщин, переживает чувство, и всякое изменение происходит, может быть, независимо от разума, в чувстве… Может быть, Таня права, что это само собою понемногу пройдёт [...].”

L.N. Tolstoy once wrote the following about his wife: “She can’t separate herself from her emotions [...]. Like any woman, emotion dominates, and any change occurs, perhaps, apart from reason, in emotion… Maybe Tanya’s right, and it’ll gradually pass by itself [...].”
In Russian the three dots that end a sentence followed by another sentence do not require a fourth dot signifying the sentence-final period (unlike English). Also note that English uses the square brackets (квадратные скобки) instead of angle brackets to enclose points of omission added to shorten a quote. (Brackets and parentheses will be discussed more fully in Chapter 7.)

There is one more instance when the points of omission appear internally: at the end of a quote followed by reporting words such as думал он, he thought.

1. «Это мы ещё посмотрим...» — думал он.
   “We’ll see about that...” he thought.

2. «Я...» — и его голос оборвался.
   “I ...” and his voice broke off.

The points of omission here still function as end punctuation, even though the sentence they terminate forms part of another sentence.

Whether used at the end or in the middle of a sentence—the points of omission invariably signal that the writer has omitted something. The omission may serve some specific stylistic purpose or may simply mark the spot where unnecessary detail has been deleted to shorten a quotation.

6.3.2. The Question Mark and Exclamation Point Used inside the Sentence

The question mark and exclamation point may also be used internally, for instance, at the end of a quote followed by reporting words:

1. «Отстань от меня!» — жаловался Ваня хриплым голосом.
   “Leave me alone!” complained Vanya in a hoarse voice.

2. «Скорый поезд уже ушёл?» — повторил иностранец с некоторой досадой.
   “The express train has already left?” repeated the foreigner with some vexation.

3. «Ты убил его?!» — завопила Маша в недоумении.
   “You killed him?!” shouted Masha in consternation.

In such cases, these marks of punctuation end a quoted sentence that forms part of a larger sentence.

6.3.3. A Period in the Middle of a Sentence

The period as a mark of punctuation is not found inside the sentence. Only in abbreviations may a period-like mark appear within a sentence, and this mark—as we have already stated—is a spelling device rather than a mark of punctuation (see Chapter 15).

If a quoted statement appears inside a larger sentence, the period (unlike the question mark or exclamation point) is omitted:
1. Его тихое «Доброе утро» всегда радовало нас.
   His quiet “Good morning” always made us glad.
   (Compare: Его громоподобное «Доброе утро!» начинало меня раздражать.
   His thunderous “Good morning!” was beginning to annoy me.)

2. Машино жалкое «Я устала» запомнилось нам на всю жизнь.
   Masha’s pitiful “I’m tired” imprinted itself in our memory forever.
   (Compare: Её жалкое «Почему? Почему?» доносилось до нас в соседней комнате.
   Her sad “Why? Why?” reached us in the neighboring room.)

   If reporting words follow a direct quote, the sentence final period is replaced by a comma that stands after the closing quotation mark. Other marks of end punctuation do remain at the end of the quoted material when reporting words follow:

1. «Он пришёл», — доложил старик.
   “He has come,” said the old man.
   (Compare: «Он приехал?» — спросил я.
   “Did he arrive?” I asked.)

2. «Он ушёл», — сказал секретарь.
   “He left,” said the secretary.
   (Compare: «Он ушёл...» — отвлечённо произнёс секретарь, будто чего-то не понимая.
   “He left...” said the secretary distractedly, as if puzzled by something.)

   “Come here,” she quietly asked.
   (Compare: «Идите сюда!» — кричал мальчик.
   “Come here!” shouted the boy.)

   Here, Russian differs from English, where the comma stands in front of the end quotation mark.

**Exercise 6.1**

Add the proper beginning and end punctuation to each sentence. The internal punctuation has already been provided, except where end marks of punctuation are required inside the sentence. Pay special attention to the English translation to understand the intended intonation of the Russian sentence.

1. осенью перелётные птицы улетают на юг
   In the fall, migratory birds fly south.

2. за время перелётов и на зимовках гибнет много птиц
   Many birds die during migrations and in their wintering grounds.
3. сколько раз я проси́ла тебя́ не шуме́ть
   How many times have I told you not to make noise?!

4. когда́ он верну́лся из командиро́вки
   When did he return from his trip?

5. ты не зна́ешь его́ а́дрес — нет, не зна́ю
   Do you know his address? No, I don’t.

6. «я не зна́ю» отве́тил учени́к
   “I don’t know,” answered the student.

7. «отку́да вы» спроси́л незнако́мец
   “Where are you from?” asked the stranger.

8. зачё́м вы ёздил туда́ именно сего́дня
   Why did you go there today of all days?

9. ты не зна́ешь, како́го числа́ он уехал
   Do you know what date he left?

10. он спра́шивал меня́, когда́ я верну́лся из поэ́здки
    He asked me when I had returned from the trip.

11. как я рад тебé́ видеть где ты так долго́ про́пада́л
    How glad I am to see you! Where were you hiding so long?

12. да, дни летя́т, жизнь прохо́дит
    Yes, the days fly by… life passes…

13. мы спроси́ли, как добра́ться до метро́
    We asked how to get to the subway.

14. ты зна́ком с этим худо́жником
    Are you acquainted with this artist?

15. она спроси́ла меня́, зна́ком ли я с этим худо́жником
    She asked me if I was acquainted with this artist.

16. а где сейча́с ваш брат он в Кали́форнии
    And where’s your brother now? Is he in California?

17. они спра́шивали меня́, где сейча́с мой брат
    They asked me where my brother is now.

18. как жа́рко я, пожа́луй, сниму́ плащ
    How hot it is! I think I’ll take off my raincoat.

19. Са́нкт-Петербу́рг называ́ют се́верной Вене́цией
    St. Petersburg is called the Northern Venice.

20. оста́вь менé в покое́ я не хочу́ слы́шать ниче́го об éтом
    Leave me alone! I don’t want to hear anything about it!

21. я попроси́л её оста́вить менé в покое́
    I asked her to leave me in peace.
22. не знаю, что и думать об этом может, сходить а может
   I don’t know what to make of it. Maybe I should go…but maybe…

23. уважаемая Нина Петровна
   Dear Nina Petrovna:

24. посмотрі посмотрі какие огромные белые чайки никогда не видела
   таких огромных
   Look! Look! What enormous white seagulls! I’ve never seen such big ones
   before!

25. ты уже закончили университет — нет ещё
   Have you already finished the university? Not yet.

26. я не знал, закончил ли он университет
   I didn’t know if he finished the university.

27. «который час» он спросил
   “What time is it?” he asked.

28. что хочешь минералку пепси-кою сок

29. «так, это было»— думал Андрей про себя
   “Okay, that was…” thought Andrei to himself.

30. я не понимаю, зачем он ушёл не понимаю не понимаю
   I don’t understand why he left. I don’t understand…I don’t understand…

In the next chapter we will begin to discuss marks of internal punctuation, the most common of which is the comma. There are so many differences in how Russian and English use the comma that we must devote two long chapters to this tiny mark of punctuation.
Chapter 7

The Comma of Enclosure (Запятая выделительная)

Besides an occasional sentence-internal exclamation point, question mark, or points of omission, the following six marks are the only internal punctuation found in Russian: the comma (запятая), the semicolon (точка с запятой), the colon (двоеточие), the dash (тире), parentheses (скобки), and quotation marks (кавычки, « »). These marks are the topic of the next several chapters. Let's begin with the most frequently used mark of internal punctuation, the comma.

The comma actually serves two quite different sets of functions. It can be used to enclose, or set off, some special sentence element. Or it can be used to divide, or separate, two sentence elements from one another. This chapter examines instances where the comma encloses various sentence elements. Commas used to set off (выделить) are called commas of enclosure (запятые выделительные) and occur in pairs, one comma being placed before the given element and one after. The comma of division will be discussed in Chapter 8.

A large variety of sentence elements must be set off by the paired comma of enclosure. Some of these elements are also set off by commas in English, while others are set off in Russian but never (or rarely) in English. Finally, there are a few instances where certain types of sentence elements must be set off by commas in English, but are never set off in Russian. When we consider the comma of enclosure we find major differences between Russian and English punctuation.

7.1. Commas Used with Direct Address

Vocatives, or words spoken in direct address (прямое обращение), must be set off by commas in Russian and English:

1. Ничего, родная, успокойся.
   It's alright, dear, calm down.
2. Не говори глупости, малая.
   Don't talk stupid, dear.
3. Дети, тише!
   Children, be quiet!
4. Не волнуйся, дорогой.
   Don't worry, dear.
Don’t forget that a comma used to enclose is actually part of a pair of commas which function as a team, with one comma before and another after the word or words being set off. This is evident, however, only when the enclosed element stands in the middle of a sentence, as in the first example above. If the enclosed element stands at a sentence boundary, only one member of the pair of commas actually appears, since the other is cancelled out by the sentence beginning or end punctuation. Here is what the punctuation would look like if commas of enclosure were actually written at sentence boundaries:

1. *Не говори глупости, милая.,
   *Don’t talk stupid, dear.,

2. *Дети, тише!
   *,Children, be quiet!

3. *Не волнуйся, дорогой.,
   *Don’t worry, dear.,

Of course, such punctuation never appears in Russian (or English) because the comma, being an internal mark of punctuation, cannot stand at a sentence boundary.

7.2. Commas that Set off Interjections

Interjections (междомётия), or emotional particles, are set off by commas:

1. Ах, как скоро ночь минула!
   *Ah, how quickly the night has passed!

2. Как я люблю море, ах, как я люблю море!
   *How I love the sea, ah, how I love the sea!

3. Ух, как холодно!
   *Oh, how cold!

4. Ох, как я устала!
   *Oh, how tired I am!

7.3. Commas that Set off Parenthetical Words

Parenthetical words and phrases (вводные слова и предложения), which express the speaker’s attitude to the topic being discussed, are set off by commas in Russian and English:

1. Это показалось ему, по-видимому, странным.
   *Apparently, that seemed strange to him.

2. А они, конечно, тоже ничего не поняли.
   *And they, of course, likewise understood nothing.

3. Она была красивая и, что ещё важнее, умная женщина.
   *She was a beautiful and, more importantly, smart woman.
4. Он, известьно, хороший парень.
   *He, as is known, is a good fellow.*

5. Он не пошлі, однако, на концерт.
   *However, they didn't go to the concert.*

**Note:** In English, the commas may be omitted from parenthetical words that the author considers minimally important to the flow of thought. In Russian, however, the commas are *never omitted* for this reason. Example:

 Он, конечно, был рад. *He was of course glad.*

Here is a list of some commonly used parenthetical expressions grouped according to meaning; all of them must be set off by commas in Russian:

a) Words expressing some logical connection between the speech situation and what is being said:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Russian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>конечно</td>
<td>of course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>вероятно</td>
<td>probably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>кажется</td>
<td>it seems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>очевидно</td>
<td>obviously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>в самом деле</td>
<td>indeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>может быть</td>
<td>perhaps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>самой собою</td>
<td>it goes without saying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>непосредственно</td>
<td>undoubtedly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>без сомнений</td>
<td>without doubt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>без сущности</td>
<td>in essence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>надо полагать</td>
<td>one must assume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>весьма вероятно</td>
<td>most probably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>должно быть</td>
<td>it would seem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b) Words indicating how regularly the action might be expected to occur:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Russian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>как обычно</td>
<td>as usual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>бывает</td>
<td>as it happens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>по обыкновению</td>
<td>as is customary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>случается</td>
<td>it would happen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>как входит</td>
<td>according to custom</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Russian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>по преданию</td>
<td>according to legend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>по мнению...</td>
<td>in the opinion of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>по-моему</td>
<td>in my opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>по-вашему</td>
<td>in your opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>по словам</td>
<td>according to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>по сообщениям</td>
<td>according to reports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>мол</td>
<td>it is said, supposedly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>действительно</td>
<td>allegedly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>говорят</td>
<td>they say, people say</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
d) Words used as a device to elicit the listener’s attention or to effect in him some desired attitude:

послóшайте  
знáете ли  
прóстите  
извинíйте  
помíлуй  
понимáешь (ли)  
скáжí на мíлость  
не повéришь  
воображáй  
представьтe себé  

Просьбы  
вежливость  
ошибочный  
неправильный  
прóстите  
извинíйте  
помíлуй  
понимáешь (ли)  
скáжí на мíлость  
не повéришь  
воображáй  
представьтe себé  


e) Words describing speaker attitude toward sentence content:

инé́ми словá́ми
другé́ми словá́ми
по выражé́нию
пóпросту говорí́
скáжéм пря́мо
так сказá́ть
что называ́ется
лúчше сказá́ть


in other words
in other words
in the words of
simply put
to put it bluntly
so to speak
as it is called
it would be better to say

f) Words that serve as logical connectors in discourse:

итá́к
меéду прóчим
занáчит
к примéру
однáко
наоборот
кстатí
крóме того
тем не мéнее
напríмер
наконéц
в конце концóв
с однóй стороны
с другóй стороны
в общéм


thus
by the way
so
by way of example
however
on the contrary
by the way
furthermore
nevertheless
for example
at last
after all
on the one hand
on the other hand
in general


g) Words that give the speaker’s emotional evaluation of what is being discussed:

к сча́стью
к сожалéнию


fortunately
unfortunately
7.3. Commas that set off parenthetical words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Russian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>к радости</td>
<td>happily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>к удивлению</td>
<td>what's more amazing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>чего доброго</td>
<td>heaven forbid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>не ровен час</td>
<td>I fear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>шутки в сторону</td>
<td>joking aside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>кроме шуток</td>
<td>no joke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>допустим</td>
<td>let's admit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>прямо скажем</td>
<td>to be frank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>действительно</td>
<td>actually</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>по правде</td>
<td>to tell the truth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>по душе</td>
<td>frankly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>между нами</td>
<td>(just) between us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>по-настоящему</td>
<td>in all seriousness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>как назло</td>
<td>as ill luck would have it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Some of the above words and phrases have both parenthetical and non-parenthetical uses. In the first sentence of each pair below, the italicized words are parenthetical and must be set off by commas. The same words in the second sentence of each pair are regular sentence elements and are therefore not set off by commas:

1. **Между нами, он не тот, за кого себя выдает.**
   *Just between us, he is not the person he makes himself out to be.*

2. **По душе, я бы даже не стал с ним разговаривать.**
   *Frankly, I wouldn't even bother talking with him.*

3. **Скажем прямо, мне не хочется туда идти.**
   *To tell it straight out, I don't feel like going there.*

4. **Действительно, а зачем нам это знать?**
   *Actually, why do we need to know that?*

5. **Будешь ты сегодня заниматься, накопец?**
   *Are you going to study today, after all?*

6. **С другой стороны, мне хочется съездить туда.**
   *On the other hand, I feel like making the trip there.*

   и т. д.
Entire prepositional phrases can likewise be used parenthetically, in which case they are set off by the paired comma:

1. На слёдующий день, к нашему величайшему удивлению, Павел не пришёл на работу.
The next day, to our great amazement, Pavel didn’t come to work.

2. По мнению учёных и специалистов, эта пробле́ма тре́бует тща́тельного изу́чения.
According to scientists and specialists, this problem requires painstaking analysis.

Note: It might be useful to mention once again that English often dispenses with the commas that enclose parenthetical words if there is no reason to emphasize these words. In modern American usage either of the following variants is correct:

a. In my opinion that’s a good idea. (no special emphasis)
b. In my opinion, that’s a good idea. (emphasis on “in my opinion”)

In Russian, such parenthetical words MUST be set off by commas, and only one variant is correct: По-моёму, это хоро́шая иде́я.

So don’t let the absence of a comma in English automatically lead you to omit the comma in Russian.

7.4. When Russian Uses No Comma but English Does

We have already mentioned the secondary elements used to extend sentences: adjectives and other modifiers (определёния), direct and indirect objects (дополнения), and the various types of adverbial modifiers (обстоятельства): adverbs of time (обстоятельства вре́мени), adverbs of place (обстоятельства ме́ста), adverbs of manner (обстоятельства обра́за де́йствия), adverbs of reason (обстоятельства причи́ны), and adverbs of purpose (обстоятельства це́ли). In Russian, such elements are not set off by commas even if they are preposed to the subject of the sentence:

1. В лесу разда́лся гро́мкий вы́стрел.
In the forest, a loud shot rang out.

2. Весно́й берёза покрывается нёжными кле́йкими листо́чками.
In spring, the birch becomes covered with soft sticky little leaves.

The prepositional phrase в лесу in the first sentence cannot be set off by a comma. Nor can the adverbial modifier весно́й in the second. Even when preposed to their subject, such adverbial modifiers cannot be set off by a comma in Russian. As regards the rules of punctuation, there would seem to be nothing more to say about it.
However, because English often sets off preposed adverbial modifiers with commas (as in the translations of the two example sentences just discussed), speakers of English are frequently tricked by false analogy into placing commas in Russian sentences where they don’t belong.

Let’s take a closer look at the English rule regarding commas with preposed adverbial modifiers, so as to make clear how inappropriate this rule is when applied to Russian. Whenever a prepositional phrase or an adverb of time or place appears in front of the subject of an English sentence, a comma can be used to set it off. This alerts the reader to violations of the general word order rule of subject first, predicate second. The comma may also serve to prevent ambiguity. For example, if the comma were omitted in the English sentence, *In the spring, mattresses are cleaned and rugs are beaten out* (Весной чистят матрасы и выбивают ковры), the reader might assume the writer was about to discuss spring mattresses (пружинные матрасы) rather than what happens to mattresses in springtime. Russian has no need for such a rule since its syntactic relations are expressed primarily by word endings rather than word order; therefore, Russian uses no comma with preposed adverbial modifiers.

English, on the other hand, allows two styles of punctuation with preposed modifiers: an open style, which avoids commas except where necessary to avoid real ambiguity; and a closed style, where commas set off all sentence-initial adverbial modifiers. These two styles appear below as an alternate of Russian sentences containing a preposed modifier (given in boldface type):

1. **Вчера пришло письмо по почте.**
   a. Yesterday a letter arrived in the mail.
   b. Yesterday, a letter arrived in the mail.

2. **После дождя бывают много грибов.**
   a. After it rains a lot of mushrooms grow.
   b. After it rains, a lot of mushrooms grow.

**Note:** Henceforward, optional commas in the English translations of example sentences will be enclosed in parentheses:

Yesterday(,) a letter arrived in the mail.
After it rains(,) a lot of mushrooms grow.

To summarize, a common punctuation error made by English-speaking students of Russian involves the incorrect use of a comma to set off a preposed adverbial modifier. Don’t be tricked into adding commas mechanically to a Russian sentence just because English uses them. Remember that no comma can be used in Russian after a preposed adverbial modifier even in cases where omitting the comma in the corresponding English would result in ambiguity.
Note: There are a few minor instances where English requires a comma but Russian does not allow one:

1) English normally uses commas to set off year from month in a date. In Russian, the year is not set off from the surrounding context:

1. Четвёртого июля 1776 г. была подписаная Декларация о независимости.
   On July 4, 1776, the Declaration of Independence was signed.

2. 5 апреля 1242 г. состоялась битва, получившая название Ледового побоища.
   On April 5, 1242, a battle took place which came to be known as the Battle of the Ice.

2) English normally uses a comma when a person’s last name is written before the first name. Russian does not use a comma when the regular order of a person’s name is thus inverted:

1. Иванов Вадим Алексеевич   Ivanov, Vadim Alekseevich
2. 102409 г. Москва
   Тверской бульвар
   дом 2, кв. 43
   Лукиной Анне Петровне
   102409 Moscow
   Tverskoi Boulevard
   Bldg. 2, apt. 43
   to Lukina, Anna Petrovna

The second example above also shows the proper way to address an envelope in Russian: zip code, city, street address, building, apartment number, and finally the name of the addressee in the dative case, the last name first with no comma following.

Exercise 7.1

Add commas where necessary in the blanks below. Beginning and end punctuation have been provided. Remember that the Russian punctuation will often differ from that of the English translations.

1. Иди сюда ___ Танечка.
   Come here, Tanetchka.

2. Между нами ___ секретов нет.
   There are no secrets between us.

3. Между нами ___ он не тот, за кого себя выдает.
   Just between us, he is not the person he makes himself out to be.

4. По-моему ___ вы глубоко ошибаетесь.
   In my opinion(,) you are completely mistaken.

5. Это ___ конечно ___ правда.
   That's of course true.
6. Николаева Галина Андреевна
Nikolaeva, Galina Andreevna

7. 12-го апреля 1860г. в США началась гражданская война.
On April 12, 1860, the US Civil War began.

8. С другой стороны это совершенно логично.
On the other hand, that's completely logical.

9. С другой стороны луга начинались пшеничные поля.
Wheat fields began on the other side of the meadow.

10. Вчера я получила важную телеграмму.
Yesterday, I received an important telegram.

11. В этом доме гости были особенно в почёте.
In that house, guests were especially honored.

12. К сожалению нам не удалось приехать во время.
Unfortunately, we failed to arrive on time.

13. К счастью нас не увидели в высокой траве.
Fortunately, no one saw us in the tall grass.

14. Ой как страшно!
Oh, how horrible!

15. 197110 г. Санкт-Петербург
Nevsky пр., 25, кв. 32
Нёшину Олегу Ивановичу
197110 St. Petersburg
Nevsky Avenue 25, apt. 32
to Neshin, Oleg Ivanovich

7.5. Commas that Set off Detached Sentence Elements

Detached elements in a sentence (обособленные члены предложения) elaborate the meaning of the sentence but do not need to be present for the sentence to be structurally correct. The following sentence contains a detached secondary element, which has been set off in italics:

Небо, золотое и багровое, отражалось в воде.
The sky, golden and crimson, was reflected in the water.

Special intonational pauses set off detached elements in spoken Russian. In written Russian, the paired comma of enclosure corresponds to these pauses. Commas also set off most detached elements in English writing, but the open style of punctuation sometimes allows these commas to be dropped. Let's look at examples of various types of detached elements.

7.5.1. Detached Modifiers

In the example sentence above, the words золотое и багровое, golden and crimson, answer the question какой? what kind of; therefore, they are modifiers. Postposed to the noun, they represent detached modifiers (обособлен-
ные определения). Below is another example of detached modifiers set off by commas:

Ле́на, в шля́пе и ша́лі, торо́пливо возвраща́лась с прогу́лки.
Lena, in hat and shawl, was returning hastily from a walk.

The words в шля́пе и ша́лі, in a hat and shawl, answer the question как ко́й? what kind of; they represent detached elements modifying the subject Ле́на, Lena.

7.5.2. Participial Phrases

The participial phrase (прича́стный оборот) is another kind of detached modifier. A participle (прича́стие) is a verb that has been transformed into an adjective.

Трава, сгиба́емая под уда́рами вё́тра и дождя́, ложи́лась на зёмлю.
The grass, bent by blows of wind and rain, lay against the earth.

The participial phrase, сгиба́емая под уда́рами вё́тра и дождя́, bent by blows of wind and rain, is a detached element modifying the noun трава, grass.

Participial phrases that follow the word they modify often correspond to subordinate clauses containing a form of the relative pronoun который, who, which, that. In Russian, both participial phrases as well as subordinate clauses (which are discussed later in this chapter) are set off by commas:

1. Траву, ско́шенную крестья́нами вче́р, дёти собра́ли в ку́чи.
The grass cut by the peasants yesterday was gathered into piles by the children.

2. Траву, кото́рую крестья́нин скоси́л вче́р, дёти собра́ли в ку́чи.
The grass that the peasants cut yesterday was gathered into piles by the children.

Note: If a participial phrase precedes the noun it modifies (a practice not found in English), it is not set off by commas:

Бро́шённый с высоты кáмень пáдает на зёмлю.
A rock thrown from above falls to the earth.
(Literally, *A thrown from above rock falls to the earth.)
(Compare: Кáмень, бро́шённый с высоты, пáдает на зёмлю.)

7.5.3. Appositives

Commas also set off a word or words used in apposition to another word in the sentence. An appositive (приложение) is a noun phrase which elaborates on the identity of another noun phrase in the same sentence. Here are some examples:
7.5. Commas That Set off Detached Sentence Elements

1. Два молодых человека, студент и офицер, были одиних лет.
   *Two young men, a student and an officer, were the same age.*

2. Он, мошеник, лошадь своей пустил в огород ко мне.
   *He, the swindler, let his horse into my garden.*

3. Степь, то есть безлесая равнина, окружала меня со всех сторон.
   *The steppe, or treeless plain, surrounded me on all sides.*

4. Воссёл меньший брат хозяина, мальчик лет семнадцати.
   *In came the host’s younger brother, a boy of about seventeen.*

   The italicized words in each of these sentences are appositives. Because they elaborate on the identity of another element in the sentence without being essential to the structure of the sentence as a whole, they must be set off by commas.

   Here we must make a small but important comment. Appositives are often introduced by such words as по имени, named, by the name of; по кличке, nicknamed; по прозвищу, with the nickname. In Russian, these phrases are set off by commas together with the appositives they introduce; in English, they may or may not be set off by commas. This is another instance where English chooses between an open and a closed style of comma usage, a choice which Russian doesn’t have:

1. У стражи находилась громадная чёрная собака неизвестной породы, по имени Пуритан.
   *The guard had a huge black dog of unknown breed name Puritan.*

2. Медвежонок, по кличке Мишутка, был любицем в цирке.
   *The bear cub called Mishutka was the darling of the circus.*

7.5.4. Prepositional Phrases of Exclusion or Addition

Prepositional phrases of exclusion or addition formed by кроме, except for, besides; помимо, сверх, in addition to; or за исключением, with the exception of, are set off by commas in Russian regardless of where they appear in the sentence. In English, as we have seen, these and other prepositional phrases may be set off by commas only when they precede the subject of the sentence:

1. В комнате, кроме двух стульев, никакой мебели не было.
   *a. Except for two chairs(,) there was no furniture in the room.
   *b. There was no furniture in the room except for two chairs.*

2. За исключением немногих недостатков, он отличный парень.
   *a. Except for a few faults(,) he’s a great guy.
   *b. He’s a great guy except for a few faults.*

3. Он слушал и, помимо боли, улыбался.
   *a. He listened and smiled in spite of himself.
   *b. In spite of himself, he listened and smiled.*
4. **Сверх всего прóчего, он ещè и рисовáл хорошо.**
   a. *In addition to everything else(,) he knew how to draw.*
   b. *He also knew how to draw in addition to everything else.*

7.5.5. **Detached Adverbial Phrases**

Detached adverbial phrases (обособленные обстоятельства), are also set off by commas. This includes phrases containing a verbal adverb (дееприча́стные обо́роты) as well as individual verbal adverbs (одино́чные дееприча́стия) which, as a rule, stand before the predicate:

1. **Закáркая, отлетéла ватáга чёрных ворóн.**
   *Cawing, a flock of black crows took to flight.*

2. **Катю́ша, си́я улы́бкой, летéла емú навстрéчу.**
   *Katuysha, aglow with smile, flew to meet him.*

3. **Мой брат, нахмúрив брови, молчáл.**
   *My brother, knitting his brows, was silent.*

4. **Поговори́в, они́ оба се́ли к окнú.**
   *After talking(,) they both sat down by the window.*

5. **Задыхáясь, я сбежáл с лéстницы.**
   *Panting, I ran down the stairs.*

6. **Из-за мы́са, рассекáя вóлны, вы́плыл огрóмный парохóд.**
   *From behind the cape, plying the waves, sailed a huge ship.*

7. **Ча́йки па́дают в вóду, ёростно вскры́кая от бóли и зло́бы.**
   *The seagulls fall into the water, calling furiously with pain and rage.*

   Not all phrases containing a verbal adverb are set off by commas, however. Certain words that derive historically from verbal adverbs are now used as regular adverbs; since they do not describe any separate action of their own they are not set off by commas. Such “adverbs of manner in the form of verbal adverbs” fall into three groups:

   a) **Individual verbal adverb forms** that stand after the verb and do not denote any separate action of their own are not set off by commas:

   1. **Он шёл не торопáсь.**
      *He walked at a leisurely pace (literally, while not hurrying).*

   2. **Мы пое́ли мóлча.**
      *We ate in silence (literally, while keeping quiet).*

      Here the forms мóлча, quietly; не торопáсь, at a leisurely pace, slowly, are similar in function to regular adverbs, and, as such, are not set off by commas.
b) Set phrases or idioms built with verbal adverbs are also not set off by commas. Below is a list of some of the most common:

- быстро языч
  *quickly*
  *(literally, “with tongue hanging out”)*

- спустя рукава
  *lazily, sloppily*
  *(literally, “letting one’s sleeves down”)*

- засучив рукава
  *hard (said of work-related activities)*
  *(literally, “having rolled up one’s sleeves”)*

- немного погодя
  *a bit later*
  *(literally, “waiting a little”)*

- очертя голову
  *without thinking, headlong*

- сломя голову
  *at breakneck speed*
  *(literally, “breaking the head”)*

Here are some example sentences containing these adverbs:

1. Серёжа всегда делает всё спустя рукава.
   *Seryosha always does everything sloppily.*

2. Он бежит сломя голову.
   *He’s running at breakneck speed.*

3. Будем работать засучив рукава.
   *We’ll work hard.*

4. Из-за тебя мне пришлось нести быстро выступив язык.
   *Because of you I had to flee as fast as I could.*

   In the last sentence, выступив язык, *as fast as I could,* is an idiomatic adverbial phrase and is not set off by commas. Compare the following sentence with a phrase containing a true verbal adverb which is set off by commas:

5. Полкан лежал у конуры, быстро выступив язык.
   *Polkan (a dog) lay by the kennel with his tongue hanging out.*

c) A few adverbs ending in -учи or -очи, which are no longer used in modern Russian as verbal adverbs, are not set off by commas:

- играючи
  *easily, as if it were child’s play*

- умеючи
  *skillfully*

- припеваяоци
  *exceedingly well, without a care in the world*

- кра́дучись
  *stealthily*

1. Он и сейчас живёт припеваяоци.
   *Even now he lives without a care in the world.*

2. Дима играючи поднимал тяжёлые гири.
   *Dima lifted heavy weights as if it were child’s play.*
7.5.6. Extended Adverbial Modifiers

Adverbial modifiers containing compound prepositions or prepositions made from another part of speech (such as a verbal adverb) are known as распро-странённые обстоятельства, or extended adverbial modifiers. Adverbial modifiers containing the following prepositions are considered to be extended and must be set off by commas in Russian:

виду́  
благодаря́  
вследствие  
по причине  
вопреки́  
незаметно́ на  
по случаю́  
в слу́чая  
во избежание́  
за неимением  
с приближением

because of (+gen.)  
thanks to (+dat.)  
as a result of (+gen.)  
due to (+gen.)  
in spite of (+dat.)  
despite (+acc.)  
on the occasion of (+gen)  
in case of (+gen)  
to avoid (+gen.)  
for lack of (+gen)  
with the approach of (+gen.)

Etymologically, all of these prepositions are either compounds of preposition plus noun (по + причине, во + избежание, etc.) or verbal adverbs (благодаря, незаметно на). Below are some examples of their use. Notice once again that in English the comma is possible only if the prepositional phrase precedes the subject; in Russian the comma is obligatory for these particular phrases regardless of where they stand in relation to the sentence subject:

1. В слу́чая задё́ржки отпра́вки то́ва́ров, он́и обеща́ли сообщи́ть по факсу.
   a. In case of delay in sending the goods(), they promised to fax us.
   b. They promised to fax us in case of any delay in sending the goods.

2. В домах, незаметно на ра́ньший час, горе́ли ла́мпы.
   a. Despite the early hour(), lamps were lit in the houses.
   b. Lamps were lit in the houses despite the early hour.

3. По причи́не тяжёлых погодных условий, по́езд прише́л с больши́м опозда́нием.
   a. Due to severe weather conditions(), the train arrived very late.
   b. The train arrived very late due to the severe weather conditions.

4. С приближением весны́ и вре́мени та́ния снего́в, им пришлось́ поменять́ место сто́йки ла́геря.
   a. With the arrival of spring and the melting snow(), they had to break camp.
   b. They had to break camp with the arrival of spring and melting of the snow.
7.5.7. Adverbial Modifiers in Apposition

Adverbs and prepositional phrases which clarify the meaning of another adver- 
bial modifier in the same sentence are likewise set off by commas. In the sen-
tences below, the set-off phrases emphasize or elaborate on a place, time, or 
condition described by another adverbial phrase. (In English, commas are op-
tional, used only if the phrase precedes the subject or to add special emphasis.)

1. На другой день, рано утром, Оленин проснулся свежим и бодрым.
   a. The next day, early in the morning, Olenin awoke fresh and alert.
   b. Early in the next day (,) Olenin awoke fresh and alert.

2. Он дошёл до отвоёровой калитки в сад и спокойно, без приключений, 
   вышел на улицу.
   He walked as far as the open gate and quietly (,) without any trouble (,) went 
   out into the street.

3. За сётом в окне, в полуденном солнце, красовался радостный и 
   весенней бор.
   a. Beyond the window screen, in the noonday sun, stood a cheerful 
      springtime grove of pines.
   b. In the noonday sun beyond the window screen (,) stood a cheerful 
      springtime grove of pines.

4. Это было ранней весной, в начале марта.
   It was in early spring, at the beginning of March.

5. Утром, ещё до восхода солнца, она отправилась на море.
   In the morning (,) even before the sun rose (,) she set off to the seashore.

6. Впереди, на горизонте, показались первые строения города.
   Ahead (,) on the horizon (,) the first buildings of the city came into view.

   In the next group of sentences below, the phrases set off by commas elabo-
   rate on the time, place, or condition introduced by another adverb or prepo-
   sitional phrase. Notice that the comma is also obligatory in English in cases 
   where the two phrases cannot be understood as separate components of the 
   same event:

1. Это случилось уже давно, лет шесть или семь назад.
   That happened a long time ago already, about 6 or 7 years ago.

2. Было очень тепло, да же жарко.
   It was very warm, even hot.

3. Обед приближался к концу, к самому интересному месту.
   The dinner was coming to an end, to the most interesting part.

4. Вернулся он только к Рождеству, в самый счёльник.
   He returned only toward Christmas, right on Christmas Eve.
5. Ùжин пода́нёт скоро́, буквáльно чéрез пять минúт.
Supper will be served soon, literally in five minutes.

7.5.8. Phrases of Comparison

Russian also uses commas to set off phrases of comparison beginning with the conjunction как, like, as. This use is obligatory. In English, once again, the commas are optionally used for emphasis, and then only when the adverbial precedes the subject:

1. Ночь приближа́лась и рослá, как грозовáя ту́ча.
The night approached and grew like a storm cloud.

2. Сёгдня, как это бь́ло и вчера́, весь день сольце.
Today, it's been sunny all day, just like yesterday.

3. Он влетéл в класс, как метеóр.
He flew into class like a meteor.

4. Наш костёр расцвёл, как больши́й кра́сно-жёлтый цветóк.
Our campfire blossomed like a big reddish-yellow flower.

Note: Be careful with the Russian conjunction как, like, as, since it has other uses that do not require a comma.

a) First, the conjunction как, like, as is not proceeded by a comma in lexically established similes or set phrases of comparison (усто́йчивые сравне́ния) such as those given below and many others like them:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Russian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>твёрдый как кáмень</td>
<td>hard as a rock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>крёпок как дуб</td>
<td>strong as an oak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>здоровá как бык</td>
<td>healthy as an ox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>свеж как огу́рчик</td>
<td>fresh as a cucumber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>бё́лый как снег</td>
<td>white as snow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>полетéл как стрела́</td>
<td>flew like an arrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(идёт) как по ма́слу</td>
<td>go smoothly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>сдéлать как слéдует</td>
<td>to do the way it should be done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(дéлать) как попáло</td>
<td>(to do) any old way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>поступáть как угодно</td>
<td>(i.e., sloppily)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>упáл как подко́шённый</td>
<td>to act however one pleases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fell as if cut down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(cf. like a stone)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(дождь) льёт как из ведра  (rain) pours as from a bucket
(cf. It’s raining cats and dogs)
(мечется) как угорельый  (rushes) like one possessed
(literally, like one dizzied by fumes)
(вертится) как бёлка в колесе  to be constantly busy
(literally, like a squirrel in a wheel)

In his book Common Russian Similes, V. M. Ogoltsev lists over 500 such idiomatic comparisons and the comma is omitted in all of them. A useful rule of thumb would be to use a comma before как, like, as, in a comparison only if you are making up a new simile of your own. When using a set expression of comparison that you have learned from Russians, leave the comma out.

b) The second instance where the conjunction как is used without a comma is in the meaning in the capacity of. Here are some examples:

1. Мы примили его слова как похвалу.
   We took his words as a compliment (literally, as praise).

2. Его молчание можно истолковать как признание вины.
   One could interpret his silence as an admission of guilt.

3. Пушкин известен миру как великий поэт.
   Pushkin is known to the world as a great poet.

Statements of comparison can contain conjunctions other than как. Phrases of comparison begun by the following conjunctions are also set off by comma: будто, as if; как будто, as if; словно, like; точно, like; что, in the meaning like. In English, such phrases need not be set off by commas (although, once again, they may be set off in closed style if they precede the subject of the sentence).

1. Душный воздух неподвижен, словно вода лесного озера.
   The stuffy air is as still as the water in a forest lake.

2. Перед ним ствол дуба и в нём, точно дверь, широкая чёрная щель.
   In front of him is an oak trunk and in it a wide black fissure like a door.

3. Искры, точно фейерверк, вздымались вверху.
   Sparks shot upwards like a firework.

4. Черемуха душестая весною расцвела и ветви золотистые, что кудри,
   завиль.
   The fragrant cherry bloomed in spring and spread golden branches like curls.

5. Она медленно подошла к окну и замерла, как будто изваяние.
   She slowly walked to the window and froze just like a statue.

We have seen that sentence elements set off by the comma of enclosure generally serve to add some additional information that makes a sentence more
expressive or precise. In speech, special intonation or pauses usually set off such words and phrases; in writing, they are set off by commas.

7.6. Commas with Particles and Response Phrases

Commas are also used to set off particles (частицы) and response phrases (релятивы) that express the following:

1. Affirmation: да, yes; конечно, of course; ладно, okay; хорошо, good; etc.
2. The word нет, no, used to express negation.
3. The word что, what, used to elicit a response to a question.

These words are set off by commas in Russian, just as they normally are in English. Here are some examples:

1. — Не забудь сделать это сегодня же.
   — Ладно, ладно, сделаю.
   “Don’t forget to do it today.”
   “Okay, okay, I will.”
2. Чего, испугался?
   What, are you scared?
3. — Ты хорошо помнишь дорогу туда?
   — Конечно, хорошо. Не беспокойся.
   “Do you remember how to get there?”
   “Of course I do. Don’t worry.”
4. Нет, рано мы всё-таки приехали.
   No, we still came early.
5. Он, конечно, прав. Да, прав.
   He’s right, of course. Yes, right.
6. — Приходи завтра в семье.
   — Хорошо, приду.
   “Come tomorrow at seven.”
   “Alright, I’ll come.”

Exercise 7.2

Add commas where needed to the sentences below. The Russian punctuation will often differ from that provided in the English translations.

1. Здесь словно в сказке каждая тропа ведёт к роднику.
   Here, just like in a fairy tale, every path leads to a spring.
2. Пушкин извёстен всему миру как великий поэт.
   Pushkin is known the world over
3. Thanks to the great number of new impressions, the day passed without our noticing.

4. In spite of the holiday, the garden was deserted.

5. Contrary to my brother’s opinion, I liked the guest.

6. At the bottom of the hill on the left stood a small wooden house.

7. The children returning home burst noisily into the hall.

8. Before us, behind a logged forest lay a rather large meadow.

9. Suddenly, at a bend in the river under the dark forest, a light flashed.

10. Here in these desert steppes, people were rebuilding their lives.

11. The bright sun gleamed playfully on the melting snow.

12. Upon arriving in the city, he immediately set off to visit his aunt.

13. I walked along and stopped every minute, struck by nature’s charm.

14. Taking one last look, she waved to me.

15. I came to a river.

16. We reached the shore.

17. A long time I admired his face, meek and clear as the spring sky.

18. The moon, full and red, began to show from behind the houses.

19. Beyond all expectation, granddad gave me several books.
20. Весь день дождь лил как из ведра.
All day it rained cats and dogs.

21. Лариса хочет преподавать русский язык как неродной.
Larisa wants to teach Russian as a foreign language.

22. Затаяв дыхание дети слушали рассказ Михайловича отца известного геолога.
Holding their breath the children listened to the story told by Misha’s father, a famous geologist.

23. Второй сын кругленький и румяный был похож лицом на мать.
The second son, plump and rosy-cheeked, resembled his mother in the face.

24. Сегодня она в новом синем платье была особенно красивая.
Today, in a new blue dress, she was especially beautiful.

25. Справа у подножия сопок расстилалось большое поле.
To the right, at the foot of the mountains, lay a large field.

26. Кроме моей сестры в комнате находились две незнакомые девушки.
Besides my sister, there were two unfamiliar girls in the room.

27. Утомленный долгой речью я закрыл глаза.
Fatigued by the long speech, I closed my eyes.

28. Он борвался в комнату как стрела и тут же упал как подкошенный.
He burst into the room like an arrow and collapsed as if struck down.

29. Около дома сидел старик худой с тонкой бородкой и курил трубку.
Near the house sat an old man, thin and with a scraggly little beard, who was smoking a pipe.

30. Измученный бессонными ночами он мгновенно заснул.
Exhausted by sleepless nights, he immediately fell asleep.

7.7. Commas Used to Set off Subordinate Clauses

Remember from the discussion in Part One that a subordinate clause (подчинённое предложение) may extend any part of the main clause and as such may fulfill the role of object, modifier, or adverb of time, place, or manner.

Let’s examine punctuation in subordinate clauses. In Russian, all subordinate clauses are obligatorily set off by commas. Here, once again, Russian punctuation differs strikingly from English, since only a few special types of subordinate clauses are set off by commas in English. One of the most common mistakes English-speaking students make when writing Russian is to omit the obligatory commas that set off a subordinate clause from the main clause.
7.7. Commas Used to Set Off Subordinate Clauses

7.7.1. Commas that Set off Explanatory Clauses

Let us first examine a very common type of complex sentence: one in which the predicate is extended by an explanatory clause. Such sentences invariably contain a verb or adjective describing a mental or emotional state, such as “think, know, be glad, be surprised,” etc.; the subordinate clause explains exactly what is known, thought, or causes the given emotion. In other words, an explanatory clause extends the predicate of the main clause by answering the question ч́т́о? what? In the examples below, the subordinate clause (прид́аточное предложе́ние) appears in italics and the subordinate conjunction (подчинительный со́ю́з) is underlined. Each explanatory clause, like subordinate clauses, is set off from the main clause by commas in Russian:

1. Он не знал, при́дёт ли Ната́ша сего́дня на лекци́и. **He didn’t know whether Natasha would come to the lecture today.**

2. Он не знал, пое́дут они́ в Пари́ж ли́бо в Рим. **He didn’t know whether they would go to Paris or Rome.**

3. Она́ ясно осозна́вала, ч́т́о жизнь е́ё изме́ни́лась. **She was plainly aware (that) her life had changed.**

4. Говори́ли, бу́дто он в моло́дости был талантли́в и умён. **People said he had been talented and smart in his youth.**

5. Мать и оте́ц стара́лись, ч́тобы дочь по́сле боле́зни скорее́ наби́ралась сил. **The mother and father made an effort so their daughter would regain her strength quickly after the illness.**

6. Я бо́йся, как бы не заболе́ть. **I was afraid (that) I might get sick.**

7. Ната́ша почу́вствова́ла, ка́к от двери́ пове́яло ве́тром. **Natasha felt a draft coming from the door.**
   (Literally, … felt how a draft came from the door.)

   An explanatory clause may also take the form of an indirect question, in which case it contains a conjunctive word (со́ю́зное слóво) identical in form to the question word used if the question were asked directly. The subordinate clauses in the sentences below, all of which are indirect questions, likewise play the role of object of the main clause verb. Note that in Russian a comma must be placed before a pronoun or adverb used to begin an indirect question in a subordinate clause. By contrast, the use of commas in such a context would be incorrect for any style of English punctuation.

1. Она́ рассказа́ла, ч́тó дела́ла. **She told what she had been doing.**
2. Он не знал, кто приходил
   He didn’t know who had come.

3. Он не знал, каким образом мне удалось это сделать.
   He didn’t know how I succeeded in doing that.

4. Мы не знали, куда она ушла.
   We didn’t know where she had gone.

5. Они не поняли, с какий целью он поехал туда.
   They didn’t understand why he went there.

6. Он не спросил, кто приходил.
   He didn’t ask who had come by.

7. Он не спросил, кому я отдала книгу.
   He didn’t ask whom I’d given the book to.

8. Я ответил, отчего я отказался.
   I explained what I had refused (literally, from what I had refused).

9. Я не знал, отчего они ушли так рано.
   I didn’t know why they left so early (literally, what they left for).

10. Я не знал, почему они ушли так рано.
    I didn’t know why they left so early.

11. Я не знал, чей это был дом.
    I didn’t know whose house it was.

12. Мы не могли догадаться, зачем они поменяли квартиру.
    We couldn’t guess why they switched apartments.

13. Мама спросила Петью, с кем он ходил в кино.
    Mama asked Petya whom he’d gone to the movies with.

14. Он не знал, откуда приехала семья Андрея.
    I didn’t know where Andrey’s family had come from.

15. Я не знал, о ком говорила Елена.
    I didn’t know whom Elena was talking about.

16. Я спросил его, по какой причине он отказался участвовать в конкурсе.
    I asked him why he had refused to participate in the competition.

As you can see, the pronouns and adverbs in the imbedded questions belong to the subordinate phrase and must be preceded by a comma.

**Note:** A comma is not used in Russian when the subordinate and main clause share the same subject and are joined by some form of the conjunctive word чтó, what. If the main clause contains a connecting word such as то or всё, however, a comma must be used.
7.7. Commas Used to Set off Subordinate Clauses

1. Он делает что хочет.
   He does what he pleases.
   (Compare: Он делает всё, что он хочет.
   He does everything he pleases.)

2. Она брала что видела.
   She would take whatever she saw.
   (Compare: Она взяла то, что она видела.
   She took what (i.e., the thing that) she saw.)

   If the verbs in each clause have different subjects, however, then a comma
   must be used:

1. Мы видим, что они делают.
   We see what they are doing.

2. Дети делают, что родители хотят.
   Children do what their parents want.

   The subordinate clause usually follows the main clause, but in conversational
   style it may be preposed for emphasis. A preposed subordinate clause,
   just like one that comes after the main clause, must be set off by a comma in
   written Russian:

1. Почему она покинула дом, никто из её друзей не мог догадаться.
   Why she abandoned her home none of her friends could guess.

2. Куда теперь идти, никто не знал.
   Where to go now no one knew.

   Once again, commas are obligatory in Russian but absent in English.

Exercise 7.3

The sentences below contain explanatory clauses. Rewrite each sentence,
adding the necessary commas.

1. Не знаю будет ли дождь завтра.
   I don't know whether it will rain tomorrow.

2. Я знаю что завтра будет дождь.
   I know (that) it will rain tomorrow.

3. Объясните мне почему вы так думаете.
   Explain to me why you think so.

4. Пётя забыл где он оставил сумку.
   Petya forgot where he had left the bag.

5. Сын прекрасно понимал что нужно от него родителям.
   The son understood perfectly well what his parents needed from him.
6. Они понимают что нам здесь трудно.
   They understand that it's hard for us here.

7. Валя так и не сказала папе куда брат пошёл.
   Valya wound up not telling her dad where her brother went.

8. Сейчас узнаем кто умеет стрелять.
   Now we’ll find out who knows how to shoot.

9. Они делают что хотят.
   They do whatever they want to.

10. Вы не скажете который сейчас час?
    Could you tell me what time it is?

11. Сейчас увидите какая у нас машина.
    Now you'll see what kind of car we have.

12. Почтальон даже не знает чей это дом.
    Even the mailman doesn't know whose house it was.

13. Я не уверен как это делается.
    I'm not sure how that is done.

14. Я сделал все что прикажете.
    I'll do everything that you order me to do.

15. Нам нужно определить какой у оппонента план.
    We need to determine what kind of plan our opponent has.

   Now let us go through the remaining types of subordinate clauses. You will see that all of them MUST be set off by commas in Russian but are rarely set off in English.

7.7.2. Commas that Set off Attributive Clauses

A comma is used before a conjunction or conjunctive word that joins an attributive clause (определительное придаточное предложение) to the main clause. Remember that a relative clause modifies an element in the main clause called the antecedent (определённое слово). The following conjunctions or conjunctive words are used for this purpose: который, who, which, that; какой, which; что (unstressed), that; чей, whose; чтобы, in order to, in order that; где, where; куда, where to; откуда, from where; когда, when; как, how; каким образом, how; как бы не, so as not to. As can be seen from the examples below, the relative clauses (in italics) modify an antecedent noun phrase in the main clause and are the functional equivalents of adjectives.

1. Вчера я получил письмо, которое я так долго ждал.
   Yesterday I received the letter (that) I had been waiting for so long.

2. Стол, за которым сидел мальчик, был высок для него.
   The table (that) the boy was sitting at was high for him.
3. У неё был цвет лица, какой бывают только у южан.  
She had the type of complexion (that) only people from the south have.

4. Это был композитор, чьё музыку она так любила.  
That was the composer whose music she loved so much.

5. Ветер дул с такои силой, что устоять на ногах было невозможно.  
The wind was so strong (that) it was impossible to keep standing.

6. Отец выскажал своё давнее мечту, чтобы его дочь стала писательницей.  
Father stated his long-held dream that his daughter would be a writer.

7. Мысль, как бы не опоздать на лекцию, заставила его ускорить шаги.  
The thought of being late to the lecture caused him to quicken his steps.

8. Мы вошли в дом, где (=в котором) когда-то прошли десять счастливых лет.  
We entered the house where we'd lived for 10 happy years.

9. Он взглянул на небо, откуда (=из которого) падали капли дождя.  
He looked up at the sky from which droplets of rain were falling.

10. Они осмотрели комнату, куда (=в которую) привела их хозяйка дома.  
They examined the room (that) the hostess brought them to.

11. Они пошли в парк, где (=в котором) играла музыка.  
They went to a park where (=in which) music was playing.

12. Настала минута, когда я должен был принять решение.  
The moment came when I had to make a decision.

In the last sentence, the clause когда я должен был принять решение, when I had to make a decision, answers the question какая минута? what moment? Therefore, it is adjectival in function, and the word когда, when, here is used as a relative conjunction.

Note: A form of the word кто, who, (instead of который) is used as the relative conjunction if the antecedent is a pronoun such as тот, the one; каждый, every, each; вский, любой, anyone; все, everyone.

1. Любой, кто приходил к ней в гости, чувствовал себя как дома.  
Anyone who visited her felt at home.

2. Все, когда я должен был увидеть, были на месте.  
Everyone I was supposed to see was there.

3. Тот, кому я нужен, живёт здесь.  
The person who needs me lives here.
4. Всякий, кто знал его, отзывался очень уважительно о нём.
Anyone who knew him spoke very respectfully of him.

Similarly, a form of the word что, which, that, is used if the pronoun всё, everthing, is the antecedent (while кото́рый, who, which, that, modifies a preceeding noun phrase):

1. Всё, что было, не вернёшь.
You can’t recreate the past. (Literally, All that was, you can’t return.)

2. Всё, чего он желает, мне не нравится.
Everything he desires displeases me.

3. Он испортил всё, что было сделано мной вчера.
He ruined everything that I had made yesterday.

4. Всё, что нереально для вас, реально для нас.
Everything that is imaginary to you is real to us.

When the antecedent of a relative clause is the neuter pronoun то, the one, the thing, several different relative conjunctions or conjunctive words are possible: что, that, which; чтобы, in order to; како́й, which; как, how; где, where; куда́, to where; отку́да, from where; когда́, when.

1. То, отку́да он узнал это, крайне заинтересовало меня.
How he found that out interested me in the extreme.

2. То, куда́ они шли, мне было неизвестно.
The place they went to was unknown to me.

3. То, что было интересно для неё, было скучно для меня.
What was interesting for her was boring for me.

Take a look at the following sentence: Мне было неизвестно, куда они ушли, I didn’t know where they went. This sentence is complex, consisting of a main clause—Мне было неизвестно, I didn’t know—and a dependent clause—куда они ушли, where they went. The word куда́, where, joins the two clauses into a single sentence. However, the main clause seems to have no subject. By contrast, in the sentence То, куда́ они шли, мне было неизвестно, The place they went to was unknown to me, the pronoun то serves as the subject of the main clause. In the sentence Мне было неизвестно, куда они ушли the entire subordinate clause куда́ они ушли serves as the logical subject of the main clause. Such sentences are quite common in Russian and usually begin with the following words:

1. Известно, что… (ор когда́..., отку́да..., для чего́..., ... ли..., како́й..., etc.)
It’s known that (or when, from where, why, whether, what, etc.)
2. **Ясно, что...** (or **когда..., откуда..., зачем..., ... ли..., как...,** etc.)
   *It's clear that* (or when, from where, why, whether, how, etc.)

3. **Неясно, что...** (or **когда..., почему..., чем..., где...,** etc.)
   *It's not clear that* (or when, why, whose, where, etc.)

4. **(По)казалось, что...**
   *It turned out that...*

5. **Слышно/видно, как...** (or **что..., кто..., куда..., откуда...,** etc.)
   *One can hear/see that* (or what, who, to where, from where, etc.)

6. **Желательно/нежелательно было, чтобы...**
   *It was/wasn't desirable that...*

7. **Возможно/невозможно, что...**
   *It is/isn't possible that...*

8. **Надо/нужно/не надо/не нужно, чтобы...**
   *It was/wasn't necessary to...*

9. **Выяснилось, что...**
   *It came to light that...*

10. **Удивительно, что...**
    *It's amazing that...*

11. **Интересно, что...** (or **когда..., почему..., кто..., где...,** etc.)
    *One wonders what...* (or when, why, who, where, how long, etc.)

### 7.7.3. Commas that Set off Predicate Subordinate Clauses

Attributive clauses can modify a predicate nominal in the main clause. In such cases they are called **predicate subordinate clauses** (придаточные предложения-сказуемые) and are set off by commas:

1. **Жара такая, что дышать нечем.**
   *The heat is so intense (that) it's hard to breathe. (Literally, is such that...)*

2. **Я тот, кого никто не любит.**
   *I am a person (whom) no one loves.*

3. **Это было всё, к чему он стремился.**
   *That was all (that) he was striving for.*

   Remember that all attributive clauses follow the nouns they modify. Therefore, relative clauses always stand in the middle or at the end and no sentence begins with one.
Note: We have seen that relative clauses in Russian must always be set off by commas. A relative clause in English is set off only if it is non-restrictive in meaning, that is, if it is parenthetical and represents a detached sentence element. The English sentence below contains a non-restrictive relative clause; it adds no essential information and is set off from the rest of the sentence:

_Moscow, the capital of Russia, is one of the world’s great cities._
_Москва, столица России, одна из великих городов мира._

If the English relative clause is restrictive, that is, if it is essential for determining the full identity of the noun phrases it modifies, it is not set off:

_The Moscow (that is located) in (the American state of) Idaho is smaller than the Russian Moscow._
_Город Москва, который находится в (американском штате) Айдахо, гораздо меньше Москвы в России._

In Russian, any subordinate clause must be set off from the main clause by commas, regardless of whether it is restrictive or non-restrictive. This is quite different from the English rule described above. Forgetting to set off subordinate clauses in Russian is a common punctuation error.

Exercise 7.4

Each sentence below contains an attributive clause. Rewrite each sentence, adding the necessary commas. Don’t pay attention to the presence or absence of commas in the English translations as this will often mislead you.

1. Дом который мы купили очень нравится детям.
   _The kids very much like the house (that) we bought._

2. Незнакомый человек которого я встретил на вокзале помог мне донести чемоданы.
   _A stranger (who) I met at the station helped carry my suitcases._

3. В этом магазине продаются вещи которые вас интересуют.
   _This store sells the things that interest you._

4. Неизвестно кто выиграет приз.
   _It’s unknown who will win the prize._

5. То что ты принёс очень пригодится нам.
   _The thing you brought will be very useful to us._

6. Санкт-Петербург который в народе называют “Питер” богат историей.
   _St. Petersburg, which people call “Piter,” is rich in history._
7. Было слышно как какие-то люди разговаривали во дворе.
Some people could be heard talking in the courtyard. (Literally, It could be heard how…)

8. Не знаю кто придёт сегодня.
I don’t know who will come today.

9. Девушка со слезами попрощалась с деревней где прожила всю жизнь.
The girl said a tearful farewell to the village where she had lived her whole life.

10. Цветы которые давно не поливали совсем засохли.
The flowers that weren’t watered for a long time withered completely.

7.7.4. Commas that Set off Dependent Clauses of Place

The sentences below contain dependent clauses of place (придаточные предложеия места). These are subordinate clauses answering the questions Куда? Where to?; Где? Where at?; Откуда? From where? Notice that in English, the main and subordinate clauses are run together; there is no comma and a preposition belonging to the main clause often directly precedes the conjunctive word of the subordinate clause. In Russian, a comma separates the two clauses. Also, each clause usually contains its own separate adverb of place: the main clause contains an adverb such as туда, to there; там, there; etc., while the subordinate clause contains the conjunctive adverbs куда, where to; где, where at; or откуда, from where.

1. Мы пошли туда, откуда доносились голоса.
We went where the voices were coming from.
(Cf. obsolete English: went thither, from whence came voices.)

Куда мы пошли? (Туда,) откуда доносились голоса.
Where did we go? (To the place) where the voices were...

2. Мы смотрели туда, где гасли лучи заходящего солнца.
We looked (at the place) where rays of the setting sun were fading.

Куда мы смотрели? (Туда,) где гасли лучи...
Where did we look? (To the place) where the rays...

3. Где счастье, там и радость.
Where(ever) there is good fortune there is also joy.

Где радость? (Там,) где счастье.
Where is there joy? (In the place) where good fortune is.

4. (Всюду,) куда б он ни приезжал, его уже ждали.
Everywhere he went people were waiting for him.

Где его ждали? Куда б он ни приезжал.
Where were they waiting? Wherever he went.
5. Где смелость, там и победа.
   Where(ever) there is bravery there is also victory.
   
   Где победа? (Там,) где смелость.
   Where is there victory? (In the place) where there is bravery.

6. Куда хочешь, туда и иди.
   Go where you want.
   
   Куда идти? Куда хочешь.
   Where should I go? Wherever you want.

Dependent clauses of place can appear at the beginning, middle or end of a complex sentence. This distinguishes them from predicative subordinate clauses, which must follow the main clause.

When the conjunctive word in a dependent adverbial modifier is куда, where to, as in the last sentence above, the adverb туда, to there, is typically omitted from the main clause in conversational style:

1. Беги, куда зовут.
   Run where you are called.
   = Беги туда, куда зовут.

2. Иди, куда все идут.
   Go where everyone is going.
   = Иди туда, куда все идут.

3. Поезжай, куда надо.
   Go (by vehicle) where you need to.
   = Поезжай туда, куда надо.

When the particle ни appears in a dependent adverbial modifier of place, the adverb in the main clause is usually indefinite: везде, всюду, повсюду, everywhere; итуда, никакуда, nowhere. The particle ни with an indefinite adverb corresponds to the English wherever, everywhere, nowhere.

1. Куда бы он ни пошёл, везде встречал знакомые лица.
   Wherever (=everywhere) he went he met familiar faces.

2. Где бы он ни был, всюду он находил себе верных друзей.
   Wherever he was he found faithful friends for himself.

Notice that the adverb may appear before or after its dependent modifier. Also, if the dependent modifier appears in the middle of the main clause it must be set off on both sides by commas. (**Remember that we are dealing with the paired comma here.**)

Compare the following three sentences:

1. Он пошёл в ту сторону, куда ушли все.
   He went (in the direction) where everyone had gone.
2. Он не знал, куда поедет на каникулы.
   He didn’t know where he’d go for (school) vacation.

3. Неизвестно, куда он поедет на каникулы.
   It is unknown where he will go for vacation.

   Even though the same conjunctive word куда, where, is used in all three sentences, the subordinate clauses are quite different. In the first sentence, куда ушли все, where everyone went, modifies the prepositional phrase в ту сторону, in that direction, and answers the question Куда он пошёл? Where did he go? Here, куда ушли все is a dependent adverbial modifier. In the second sentence, куда поедет на каникулы, where he’d go for vacation, serves as object of the main clause verb and answers the question Чего он не знал? What didn’t he know? Here, куда поедет на каникулы is a subordinate clause with an object modifier. Finally, the third subordinate clause, куда он поедет на каникулы, where he will go for vacation, is a subject subordinate clause which answers the question Что неизвестно? What is unknown?

Exercise 7.5

Each sentence below contains a subordinate clause that modifies a predicate nominal (in italics) in the main clause. Rewrite each sentence, adding the necessary commas.

1. Ее ребёнок для неё всё чем она живёт.
   Her child is her whole reason for living. (Literally, all, by which she lives)

2. Вы том кого я давно жду.
   You are the one (whom) I’ve been waiting for so long.

3. Он таковых как мы и предполагали.
   He’s just like we supposed. (literally, the kind like we supposed)

4. Кинокамера — это то что я давно хотел приобрести.
   A movie camera is what I’ve wanted to acquire for a long time.

5. Несмотря ни на что, он сегодня том же что и вчера.
   Despite everything, he’s the same person today as yesterday.

6. Теперь Виктор не том что был в прежние годы.
   Now Victor is not the man (that) he was in former years.

7. Это всё чего мог добиться инженер.
   That’s everything (that) an engineer can achieve.

8. Это как раз то что я так долго искал.
   This is precisely what I have been searching for so long.

9. Она всё такая же как была пять лет назад.
   She’s still the same as she was five years ago.
10. Результат опыта был таковой же как в прошлый раз.
The result of the experiment was the same as last time.

11. Герой — это тот кто творит жизнь вопреки смерти.
A hero is someone who creates life in the face of death.

12. Вечер был именно таковым как обещало утро.
The evening was just like the morning had promised.

13. Это было всё в чем мы тогда нуждались.
That was everything (that) we needed.

14. Мороз таков что трудно дышать.
The frost takes one’s breath away. (Literally, The frost is such that it’s hard to breathe)

15. Вера не такова чтобы отказаться от принятого решения.
Vera is not the type to back away from what she’s decided to do.

7.7.5. Commas that Set off Dependent Clauses of Time

The sentences below contain dependent clauses of time (придаточные предложения времени), which answer the question Когда? When? Such clauses may precede or follow the main clause but are always set off from it by commas. Dependent clauses of time can be set off in English only if they precede the subject.

1. Когда он открыл дверь, в комнату вбежала большая собака.
When he opened the door(,) a big dog ran into the room.

2. В комнату вбежала большая собака, когда он открыл дверь.
A big dog ran into the room when he opened the door.

A dependent adverbial modifier of time sometimes follows an adverb or prepositional phrase belonging to the main clause. In such cases, the dependent clause must be set off on both sides by commas. English uses commas here only as a stylistic option to highlight the information in the dependent clause.

1. Вечером, когда гости уехали, я нашёл время поговорить с ним.
In the evening(,) after the guests left(,) I found time to talk with him.
(emphasis)

2. Зимой, когда он писал дипломную работу, он целями днями сидел в библиотеке.
In winter(,) when he was writing his thesis(,) he sat in the library for days on end.

3. В апреле, когда по-настоящему приходит весна в эти края, оживает вся природа.
In April(,) when spring really arrives here(,) all nature comes alive.
4. **Пото́м, когда́ я глубже въшёл в лес, он (лес) мне показался совсем иным.**

Then(,) when I went deeper into the forest (,) it (the forest) seemed completely different to me.

In these sentences the words ве́чером, in the evening; зимо́й, in winter; and в áпреле, in April; пото́м, then, belong to the main clause and help clarify when the main clause event took place. Therefore, the dependent clause is separated from them by a comma.

So far we have examined only sentences where commas set off dependent clauses containing the conjunctive word когда, when. Several other conjunctive words also appear in temporal clauses: покá, while; покá не, until; как, when (said of a sudden or immediate action); как то́лько, as soon as. Clauses formed with these words must also be set off by commas in Russian.

5. **Покá стóрож спал, во́ры проникли в зда́ние.**

While the watchman slept(,) thieves crept into the building.

6. **Он подожда́л, покá не пришёл отéц.**

He waited until his father came.

7. **Он дал себе́ слово́ не выезжáть до тех пор, покá не зако́нчит своего́ ромáна.**

He promised himself not to go anywhere till he finished his novel.

8. **Едвá я вошёл в кóмнату, как зазвони́л телефóн.**

 Barely had I entered the room when the phone rang.

9. **Как то́лько он открыл окóно, в кóмнату ворвáлся шум больши́го гóрода.**

As soon as he opened the window(,) in rushed the noise of a big city.

**Note:** Several compound conjunctions of time also contain как or чём: прё́жде чем, right before; в то вре́мя как, while, as; с тех пор как, since; после того как, after; до тех пор покá, until; до того как, before.

1. **Прё́жде чем учи́ть мальчика, я до́лжен узнать его́ ду́шу.**

Before teaching the boy(,) I must get to know his soul.

2. **В то вре́мя как я разгова́ривала по телефóну, дéти ти́хо игра́ли в углó кóмнаты.**

While I talked on the phone(,) the kids played quietly in a corner of the room.

3. **Она́ заметно поседéла, с тех пор как я её ви́дел в посёле́дний раз.**

She has gone noticeably gray since I saw her last.

4. **Ты пойдёшь гуля́ть, после того как сдéлаешь все уро́ки.**

You can go play after you finish all your homework.
5. До того как она приехала сюда, она жила в Москве.
   Before she came here(,) she lived in Moscow.

Exercise 7.6

The sentences below contain dependent clauses of time. Rewrite each sentence, adding the necessary commas.

1. Они жили в Омске до того как переехали в Новгород.
   They lived in Omsk before moving to Novgorod.

2. Как только я услышал шум я сразу прибежал сюда.
   As soon as I heard the noise(,) I immediately came running.

3. Я вам сообщу когда узнаю об этом.
   I'll tell you when I find out myself.

4. Пока мы спали папа положил все подарки под ёлку.
   While we slept(,) papa put all of the gifts under the tree.

5. Нужно знать синтаксис прережде чем учить пунктуацию.
   You need to know syntax before studying punctuation.

6. Летом когда все другие дети отдыхали Коля занимался арифметикой.
   In the summer, when all the other kids were on vacation, Kolya studied arithmetic.

7. Они стояли под деревом пока не кончился дождь.
   They stood under a tree until the rain ended.

8. Нужно думать прережде чем действовать.
   You need to think before you act.

9. Всё было уже распродано когда мы приехали.
   Everything had already been sold by the time we got there.

10. Он оставался в постели до тех пор пока ему врачи не разрешили вставать.
    He stayed in bed until the doctors allowed him to get up.

7.7.6. Commas that Set off Dependent Clauses of Purpose

The sentences below contain dependent clauses of purpose (придаточные предложения причины), which answer the question Почему? Why? The following conjunctive words, several of which are compound, connect clauses of cause or reason to the main clause: потому что, because; оттого что, because; так как, since; ещё, for (in the sense of because); ввиду того что, due to the fact that; благодаря тому что, thanks to the fact that. In Russian, dependent clauses of purpose are always set off from a main clause by commas regardless of word order. In English, commas are possible only if the clause is preposed to sentence subject.
7.7. Commas Used to Set off Subordinate Clauses

1. Стало прохладно, от того что с моря подул свежий ветер.
   It got cooler because a fresh wind began blowing from the sea.

2. Он въехал из дома рано, потому что боился опоздать.
   He left home early because he was afraid of being late.

3. Я не посетил выставку, так как у меня не было времени.
   I didn’t visit the exhibition since I didn’t have time.

4. Видно того что погода ухудшилась, экскурсия была отменена.
   Due to a deterioration of the weather, the trip was cancelled.

5. Благодаря тому что лето было дождливым, зелень в садах оставалась свежей.
   Thanks to the rainy summer, the garden plants remained lush.

6. Спать не хотелось, ибо на душе было неспокойно.
   It was hard to sleep, for (his) soul was troubled.

Note: There are instances when compound conjunctions such as потом что, because; от того что, because, are divided by a comma so that the first element becomes part of the main clause and only the second element remains in the dependent clause. Dividing the conjunction in this way corresponds to a pause that occurs in speech after the words потом or от того. This pause, and the comma that corresponds to it in writing, mark the reason as the topic of the sentence. Compare the following two sentences:

1. Экскурсия не состоялась, потому что была плохая погода.
   The trip didn’t take place because of bad weather.

2. Экскурсия не состоялась потому, что была плохая погода.
   The reason the trip didn’t take place was because of bad weather.

The first sentence simply states that a certain trip did not take place, then adds the reason why. The second contains a presupposition that the listener already knows the trip did not take place and wants to know the reason. A comma within the compound conjunction (and the pause in speech) topicalizes the reason behind the main clause action. Placing the entire compound conjunction in the dependent clause, as in the first sentence above, represents the neutral and more commonly encountered style of punctuation. Here is another set of examples:

1. Я пошёл в театр, потому что Саша дал мне свой билет.
   I went to the theater because Sasha gave me his ticket.

2. Я пошёл в театр потому, что Саша дал мне свой билет.
   The reason I went to the theater was because Sasha gave me his ticket.

The divided conjunctions потому что, because; от того что, because, normally appear in sentences that cast doubt or express denial of a possible reason, or in sentences where more than one reason is offered. In such sen-
tences a pause occurs between потому or оттого and что, and the place of this pause is marked by the comma.

1. Я пошёл в кино не потому, что не хотел заниматься, а просто потому, что шёл хороший фильм.
   *I went to the movies not because I didn’t want to study but simply because a good movie was playing.*

2. Всё это имеет для меня значение оттого, что больше я сюда никогда не вернусь.
   *All this has meaning for me because I’ll never return here.*

3. Он заехал к нам потому, что ему было это по пути, и потому, что мы его просили.
   *He dropped by to see us because it was on his way and because we’d asked him.*

   The placement of the comma in compound conjunctions of reason depends upon topic/comment structure.

**Exercise 7.7**

Add commas where needed to the sentences below. In sentences containing dependent clauses of purpose, be sure to read the English translation to determine the intended topic/comment structure before deciding where to place the comma.

1. Я сегодня весь день свободен потому что сделал всё вчера.
   *I’m free all day today because I did everything yesterday.*

2. Он вышел оттуда откуда вышла группа девушек.
   *He came out from (the place) where a group of girls came out from.*

3. Когда у меня в руках новая книга я чувствую нетерпение прочитать её.
   *When I have a new book in my hands(,) I feel impatience to read it.*

4. Библиотека была закрыта потому что было воскресенье.
   *The library was closed because it was Sunday.*

5. Библиотека была закрыта потому что было воскресенье.
   *The reason the library was closed was because it was Sunday.*

6. Ввиду того что погода ухудшилась поездка не состоялась.
   *Because the weather turned bad(,) the trip didn’t take place.*

7. Я смотрел ей вслед пока она не затерялась среди толпы.
   *I watched her until she disappeared in the crowd.*

8. Трава была необычайно сочной благодаря тому что часто шли дожди.
   *The grass was unusually lush thanks to the frequent rains.*
9. В то время как зима в южном полушарии в северном полушарии лето. When it's winter in the Southern Hemisphere(,), it's summer in the Northern Hemisphere.

10. Солнце уже встало над лесом когда я вышел к реке. The sun had already risen over the forest when I came to the river.

11. В начале того что водород летчей воздуха шар с водородом быстро поднимается на значительную высоту. Because hydrogen is lighter than air(,) a balloon filled with hydrogen quickly rises to a significant altitude.

12. Как только начался заниматься заря путешественники продолжили путь. As soon as dawn began(,) the travelers resumed their journey.

13. По мере того как работа приближалась к концу я всё больше увлекался ею. As the work approached an end(,) I became even more engrossed in it.

14. После лекции когда было уже два часа я отправился домой. After the lecture(,) when it was already two(,) I set out for home.

15. Она выполнила свою работу в срок благодаря тому что сумела хорошо организовать своё время. She got her work done on time thanks to the fact that she was able to organize her time well.

16. Он быстро уснул потому что за день очень устал. He quickly fell asleep because the day had really tired him out.

17. Теперь когда он закончил картину нам разрешили посмотреть её. Now, when he finished the picture, we were allowed to look at it.

18. Где нет любви там нет и критики. Where there is no love for art there is no criticism of it either.

19. Мы отдыхали в деревне пока не кончились канкуньи. We rested in the country until our vacation ended.

20. Речка обмелела потому что лето было засушливое. The river got shallow because the summer was dry.

7.7.7. Commas that Set off Dependent Clauses of Manner

The sentences below contain dependent clauses of manner (придаточные предложения образа действия), which answer the questions Как? How?; Каким образом? In what way, by what manner? These clauses are always set off by commas in Russian regardless of word order. In English, they need not be set off by commas, though they occasionally are for special emphasis.

1. Он жил просто, как все мы живем. He lived simply, as all of us live.
Here, the main clause is Он жил просто, *He lived simply*; как все мы живём, *as all of us live*, is a subordinate clause of manner. It expands the meaning of the word просто, *simply*, an adverb of manner in the main clause, by answering the question Как просто? *How simply?*

In addition to the unstressed conjunction как, *as, like*, several conjunctive words are used to join clauses of manner to the main clause, including как будто, *as if* and its synonym как если бы, *as if*.

2. Я так скучаю по тебе, как будто не видел тебя целый год.
Я так скучаю по тебе, как если бы не видел тебя целый год.
*I miss you like I haven't seen you all year.*

3. Стало так темно, как будто наступила ночь.
Стало так темно, как если бы наступила ночь.
*It became as dark as if night had fallen.*

The same basic meaning is added by the conjunctions точно, будто, сложно, *all of which correspond to the English as if.*

4. Она опять замолчала, сложно задумалась.
*She fell silent again as if deep in thought.*

5. Шорох дождя звучал так тайно, точно предупреждал о чём-то.
*The rustle of rain sounded so mysterious, as if it were warning of something.*

6. Осень промелькнула быстро, будто золотая птица.
*Fall flashed by like a golden bird.*

Dependent clauses of manner that express unequal comparisons are attached to the main clause by the conjunction чем, *than.*

7. Я сделал всё иначе, чем он.
*I did everything differently than he did.*

8. Всё оказалось по-другому, чем мы ожидали.
*Everything turned out differently than we expected.*

This type of dependent clause is always set off by commas in Russian but never in English.

Commas appear in two other sentence types involving comparisons. In sentences of the type every time x occurs then y also occurs, the conjunction сколько connects the subordinate clause to a main clause containing the conjunction сколько:

9. Сколько раз мы с ней встречались, сколько раз спорили об этом.
*Any time we met, we argued about that.*
(Literally, How many times we met, so many times we argued... *)

In comparisons using чем ... тем, *the more ... the more*, the conjunction чем connects the subordinate to the main clause, and the main clause always contains the conjunction тем.
10. Чем больше я занимаюсь музыкой, тем больше увлекаюсь ею.
The more I study music the more I am fascinated by it.

One more conjunction used to join a dependent clause of manner to the main clause is unstressed что, that. This conjunction appears in the Russian equivalent of English sentences of the type so ... that.

11. Было так темно, что мы с трудом различали дорогу.
It was so dark (that) we had difficulty making out the road.

12. Река так блестит на солнце, что глаза больно смотреть.
The river gleams in the sun so brightly (that) it hurts the eyes.

13. Я так волновался, что ничего не слышал вокруг.
I was so agitated (that) I didn’t hear anything around me.

Dependent clauses of manner containing the conjunction что always follow the main clause. Once again, in Russian the dependent clauses must be set off by commas, while in English they are not.

One more conjunction that signals the presence of a dependent clause of manner is чтобы, that, which is used to expand the adverb так in the main clause of sentences with the meaning in such a way that.... The conjunction чтобы imparts a nuance of resultativity and is obligatory in dependent clauses which expand a main clause word that conveys desire or causation, such as надо, must; должен, ought to; желать, to wish; приказывать, to order; стремиться, to strive, etc. Чтобы clauses are always set off by commas.

1. Надо работать так, чтобы всем была полезна.
One should work in a way that makes everyone benefit.

2. Он вёл себя так, чтобы все на него обратили внимание.
He behaved in a way that caused everyone to take notice of him.

3. Она старалась сделать так, чтобы учитель похвалил её.
She tried to do it in such a way that her teacher would praise her.

4. Учитель должен говорить так, чтобы ученики поняли её.
A teacher should speak in a way that lets students understand him.

Note: Be careful not to confuse the conjunctive word так как, since, because, that appears in dependent clauses of reason (whose elements are never divided by a comma) with так, как, in such a way that, found in sentences with a dependent clause of manner:

1. Всё вышло хорошо, так как мы послушались вашего совета.
Everything wound up fine because we obeyed your advice.

2. Всё получилось совсем не так, как мы ждали.
Everything turned out not at all the way (that) we wished.
7.7.8. Commas that Set off Dependent Clauses of Effect

The sentences below contain dependent clauses of effect (придаточные предложении следствия), which are used to explain the logical effect of the action or situation described in the main clause. The following conjunctive words serve to introduce clauses of effect: поэтому, and therefore; так что, (and) so; оттого, and from that; and вследствие, as a result of. The last is used mainly in bookish style.

1. Я часто болел в этом году, поэтому мне пришлось пропустить много занятий.
   I was often sick this year and therefore I had to miss a lot of classes.

2. Я часто болел в этом году, так что мне пришлось пропустить...
   I was often sick this year (and) so I had to miss...

3. Я часто болел в этом году, оттого мне пришлось пропустить...
   I was often sick this year and for that reason I had to miss...

   A dependent clause of effect always follows the main clause and is set off from it by commas.

   In sentences with a dependent clause of effect, the entire conjunction так что, (and) so, belongs to the subordinate clause:

1. Река сильно блестит, так что глазам больно смотреть.
   The river gleams very brightly so it hurts our eyes to look.

2. Я очень волновался, так что ничего не слышал вокруг.
   I was very agitated so I didn’t hear anything around me.

3. Он говорил ясно, так что я сразу всё понял.
   He spoke clearly so I understood everything.

   In sentences with a dependent clause of manner, however, the adverb так, so, in such a way, belongs to the main clause, while the conjunction что, that, belongs to the dependent clause.

1. Река так блестит, что глазам больно смотреть.
   The river is so bright (that) it hurts our eyes to look.

   Река блестит так, что глазам больно смотреть.
   The river gleams in such a way that it hurts our eyes to look.

2. Я так волновался, что ничего не слышал вокруг.
   I was so worried (that) I didn’t hear anything around me.

   Я волновался так, что ничего не слышал вокруг.
   I worried so much (that) I didn’t hear anything around me.

3. Он говорил так ясно, что я сразу всё понял.
   He spoke so clearly that I understood everything right away.
Он говорил так, что я сразу всё понял.
He spoke in such a way that I understood everything right away.

Placing the adverb так, so, \textit{in such a way}, after the verb (as in the second version in each pair above) makes the sentence more emphatic.

7.7.9. Commas that Set off Dependent Clauses of Condition

\textbf{Dependent clauses of condition (придаточные предложения условия)} express some condition or action that affects the situation described in the main clause. They occur in sentences of the type \textit{if ... then} and are connected to the main clause by the conjunctions: \textit{если}, \textit{if}; \textit{когда}, \textit{in the meaning if}; \textit{если бы}, \textit{if} (hypothetical); \textit{когда бы}, \textit{if} (hypothetical). The particle \textit{то}, \textit{then}, can optionally appear in the main clause for emphasis if the main clause follows the dependent clause.

1. \textit{Если я увижу его, (то) я поговорю с ним об этом.}
   \textit{If I see him, (then) I'll talk to him about it.}

   Dependent clauses of condition, like all dependent clauses in Russian, are invariably set off by commas. In English, no comma is used except optionally in closed style when the dependent clause precedes the main clause.

2. \textit{Если он пообещал, он сдержит своё слово.}
   \textit{If he promised, he'll keep his word.}

3. \textit{Если бы ты принёс ему учебник, он бы закончил всё в срок.}
   \textit{If you had brought him the book, he'd have finished everything on time.}

4. \textit{Если Елена придёт до пятнадцати часов, она позвонит тебе.}
   \textit{If Yelena comes before five, she'll call you.}

5. \textit{Я приду вовремя, если освобожусь к вечеру.}
   \textit{I will come on time if I get free by evening.}

6. \textit{Если цветы не поливать, они вянут.}
   \textit{If you don't water flowers, they wilt.}

7. \textit{Когда цветы не поливаются, они вянут (here, когда = если).}
   \textit{When you don't water flowers, they wilt.}

8. \textit{Если бы они звонили, были бы записка на телефоне.}
   \textit{If they had called, there'd be a message on the answering machine.}

9. \textit{Если бы ты крикнул громче, (то) он бы тебя услышал.}
   \textit{If you had shouted louder, (then) he would have heard you.}

10. \textit{Приходи в субботу, если у тебя будет время.}
    \textit{Come on Saturday if you have time.}

11. \textit{Я буду очень рад, если ты меня встретишь.}
    \textit{I'll be very glad if you meet me.}
The conjunction раз, if, since, may replace если in colloquial speech. It has something of the flavor of the English seein’ as how.

1. Раз уж ты пришёл, давай сыграем в шахматы.
   Seein’ as how you came let’s play chess.

2. Раз ты сегодня занят, (то) приходи завтра.
   Since you’re busy today (then) come tomorrow.

The conjunction когда бы (когда б), if, sometimes replaces the more common если бы, as in these lines of poetry by A.S. Pushkin.

Ох, лётно красное!
Любуйся я теёй,
Когда б не зной, да пыль,
Да комары, да муки.

Oh, beautiful summer!
I would love you,
If not for the sultry heat, and the dust,
And the mosquitoes, and the flies.

7.7.10. Commas that Set off Dependent Clauses of Concession

Dependent clauses of concession (придаточные предложения уступительные) are connected to the main clause by the following conjunctions: хотя, although, even though; несмотря на то что, despite the fact that; пусть, пускай, even though; or by the following conjunctive words: как ни, no matter how, however; что бы ни, whatever; сколько ни, no matter how much; etc.

1. Я должен ехать туда, хотя и не хочу этого делать.
   I have to go there(,) even though I don’t want to.

2. Пусть я неправ, (но) ты должен меня выслушать.
   Even if I’m wrong(,) you should still hear me out.

3. Пускай порой тебе вздутияется, (но) ты головы не опускай.
   Even if you get to feeling sad sometimes(,) don’t let it get you down.

4. Усы и брови у него были чёрные, несмотря на то что волосы были светлые.
   His moustache and eyebrows were dark though his hair was light.

5. Как ни сильён был страх перед неизвестностью, он продолжали путь.
   No matter how much they feared the unknown, they kept on going.

6. Сколько он ни говорил, его никто не понимал.
   No matter how much he talked(,) no one understood him.

7. Как ни просил я его простить меня, он ушёл рассерженный.
   No matter how hard I begged him to forgive me(,) he still left angry.

8. Что бы ни говорили ему, он никогда не обижался.
   No matter what people said to him(,) he never took offense.
9. Чтó бы ни говори́ли о жи́зни, она́ всегда уди́вительна и прекрасна.
No matter what people say about life(,) it is always amazing and wonderful.

10. Скóлько с ним ни спорь, его не переско́ришь.
No matter how much you argue with him(,) you can’t win.

Placed before or after the main clause, a dependent clause of concession is always set off by commas in Russian; in English, commas are possible as a stylistic option only if the dependent clause of concession precedes the main clause.

Exercise 7.8

Rewrite these sentences, adding commas where needed to set off the subordinate clauses.

1. Я сде́лал всё так как ты посове́товал мне.
   I did everything (just) the way you advised me to.

2. Всё произошлó совсéм не так как я предполага́л.
   Everything happened not at all the way I had anticipated.

3. Состоя́ние егó до́чери се́годня лу́чше чем вчера́.
   His daughter’s condition is better today than it was yesterday.

4. Чем бо́лее я узна́ю егó тем бо́льше он мне нра́вится.
   The better I get to know him the more I like him.

5. Он пе́ли так ть́хо что на ули́це ничегó не бь́ло слы́шно.
   They sang so quietly that nothing could be heard outside.

6. Я стара́лся говори́ть так чтóбы никтó не заме́тил моего́ волнё́ния.
   I tried to talk in such a way that no one would notice my agitation.

7. Он занима́лся мно́го чтóбы не отстáть от сво́их брáтьев.
   He studied a lot so as not to fall behind his brothers.

8. Чем ра́ньше ты меня́ разбúдишь тем лу́чше.
   The sooner you wake me the better.

9. Бýло очень темнó так что в двух шагáх ничегó не бь́ло ви́дно.
   It was very dark and so nothing was visible even two paces away.

10. Бýло так темнó что в двух шагáх ничегó не бь́ло ви́дно.
    It was so dark that nothing was visible even two paces away.

11. Раз свет горíт онý дóма.
    If the lights are on, they’re home.

12. Несмотря на то что морóз сильный дéти легко оде́ты.
    Despite the fact that it is bitterly cold, the kids are lightly dressed.

13. Ёсли бóду зáвтра в кни́жном магази́не я купи́лó этú кни́гу.
    If I’m in the bookstore today, I’ll buy that book.
14. Если будешь в наших краях заходи в гости.
Drop by if you’re in the area. (literally, in our regions)

15. Как ни интересна была книга мне пришлось отложить её.
In spite of how interesting the book was, I had to set it aside.

16. Хотя было уже темно мы не зажигали свет.
Although it was already dark, we didn’t turn on the light.

17. Несмотря на то что вода в море была прохладная мы решили искупаться.
Even though the seawater was chilly we decided to go for a swim.

18. Чего бы мне это ни стоило я должен закончить дело в срок.
No matter what it takes, I should finish the work on time.

19. Если ты ему поможешь он тебе будет очень благодарен.
If you help him, he’ll be very grateful.

20. Раз он пообещал то выполнит.
If he promised, then he’ll do it.
Chapter 8

The Comma of Separation (Запятая разделительная)

The comma used for separating parallel sentence elements, or items in a series (однородные члены предложения), need not come in pairs (unlike the comma of enclosure discussed in Chapter 7). A single comma separates two parallel items, and multiple commas separate multiple items in a series. Also unlike the paired comma, the comma of separation frequently occurs together with coordinating conjunctions such as и and, или or, and но but.

8.1. Commas that Separate Parallel Items not Joined by a Coordinating Conjunction

A comma is used to separate parallel sentence elements not joined by a coordinating conjunction such as и, and. Look at the following sentences in which the parallel items are italicized:

1. Справа, слева, впереди забелели берёзовые стволы.
To the right, left(,) and straight ahead appeared white birch trunks.

2. Он уложил бумаги в портфель, надел плащ, подошёл к окну.
He put the papers in the briefcase, put on a coat(,) and walked up to the window.

3. На лице её отразилась растерянность, смущение, признательность (Дорохов).
Her face expressed confusion, embarrassment(,) and gratitude.

4. На столе появился самовар, сахарница с мелкими кусочками рафинада, тарелка с чёрным хлебом (Солоухин).
On the table appeared a samovar, a sugar bowl with small lumps of sugar, and a plate of black bread.

5. От её улыбки, глаз, слов исходила какая-то теплота.
A kind of warmth emanated from her smile, eyes(,) and quiet words.

In the first sentence, the parallel items are the adverbs справа, слева, впереди, which modify a single verb; in the second, the predicates уложил, надёл, подошёл which relate to a single subject; in the third, the parallel subjects растерянность, смущение, признательность; in the fourth, the parallel subjects самовар, сахарница, тарелка; and in the fifth, the parallel objects улыбки, глаз, слов.
Notes:

1) English normally uses the coordinating conjunction *and* to join the last two items in a series. While Russian may also use *и*, *and*, for this purpose, more often a comma replaces the conjunction. The Russian punctuation of parallel items joined by a conjunction is discussed below in section 8.3.

2) Verbal constructions that form a united semantic whole are not separated by commas even though they seem to be parallel items:

1. *Сдь посиді со мной.*
   Sit with me a while. (Lit., sit down, sit a while…)

2. *Я пошёл посмотреть на них.*
   I went and looked at them.

3. *Сході принесі фрукти.*
   Go bring fruit.

4. *Ляг полежі немного.*
   Lie down and rest for a while.

5. *Пойді помогі брату своєму.*
   Go help your brother.

The rules for using commas with strings of adjectival modifiers in Russian is rather complex, and we will devote the next section specifically to this topic.

8.2. Punctuation in Strings of Adjectival Modifiers

Not all compound elements in a sentence are true parallel items. This is especially true with regard to adjectival modifiers. Two or more adjectives that modify a single noun are not separated by commas unless they represent true parallel items. How can one tell if adjectives in a series are actually parallel items in a series? Fortunately, the rules are generally similar in Russian and English.

a) **If two adjectives cannot be combined with the conjunction *и*, *and*, they are not parallel**; consequently, they are not divided by a comma. The sentence below contains two non-parallel adjectives:

*По обеим сторонам улицы стояли высокие кирпичные дома.*

*On both sides of the street stood tall brick buildings.*

Why can’t these two adjectives be joined by *и*, *and*, or divided by a comma? The answer lies in the adjectives’ semantic type. The adjective *кирпичные*, *brick*, is a *relational* adjective (*относительное прилагательное*), while the adjective *высокие*, *tall*, is a *qualitative* adjective (*качественное прилагательное*). You will recall that qualitative adjectives describe the noun’s external attributes, while relational adjectives describe some intrinsic quality such
as the material the noun is made of or its place of origin (русский, Russian; сибирский, Siberian, etc.). In Russian, just as in English, it would sound odd to say *высокие и кирпичные дома, *tall and brick buildings because the two adjectives are not of the same type. It would be equally odd to divide them with a comma. (Recall that the asterisk, звёздочка, is a device linguists use to mark examples of incorrect usage.)

Thus, you can see that combinations of qualitative and relational adjectives cannot be divided. Here are a few more examples of such combinations:

большое деревянное здание
высокий кирпичный дом
двуэтажный каменный дом
короткий зимний день
густой листственный лес
пекрашное раннее летнее утро

large wooden building
tall brick house
two-storey stone house
short winter day
thick broadleaf forest
beautiful early summer morning

And so, although the above pairs of adjectives modify a single noun, they are not items in a series and cannot be separated by a comma. Two or more qualitative adjectives in a series would be divided: новые, красивые, высокие дома, new, beautiful, tall houses. And two or more relational adjectives in a series would also be divided: кирпичные, деревянные, каменные дома, brick, wood, stone houses.

b) Modifiers denoting different varieties of the same category of meaning are also considered parallel and are separated by a comma (or by a coordinating conjunction without a comma).

1. Красные, розовые, жёлтые цветы.
   Red, pink and yellow flowers.
   (different colors of flowers)

2. Sasha’s, Masha’s, and Grisha’s notebooks.
   (different people’s notebooks)

3. Большые и маленькие дома.
   Large and small houses.
   (houses of various sizes)

   Parallel modifiers can be joined by the conjunction (союз) и, and, which emphasizes their parallelism with respect to the noun modified:

4. И красные, и розовые, и жёлтые цветы.
   Red and pink and yellow flowers.

   Not all adjectives that modify the same noun are parallel elements, however. If the adjectives belong to different classes of meaning, they are not considered parallel modifiers.

5. Голубые спортивные знамёна.
   Blue sports banners.
   (color + function)
6. Старые деревянные дома.

Old wooden houses. (age + composition)

Remember that it is not possible to add the conjunction и, and, between non-parallel adjectives. No one would say *blue and sports banners or *old and wooden houses.

c) The pronominal adjective constitutes another type of adjectival modifier. A demonstrative pronoun (указательное местоимение), possessive pronoun (притяжательное местоимение), or possessive adjective (притяжательное прилагательное) is never divided from a relational or qualitative adjective by a comma or a conjunction.

том же самый красный шарф that same red scarf
их прекрасный фруктовый сад their wonderful fruit orchard
мой любимая фарфоровая чашка my favorite porcelain cup
Олегова кожаная куртка Oleg's leather coat
Танина умные глаза Tanya's clever eyes
Серёжин серый костюм Seryozha's gray suit
шумная птичная стая a noisy flock of birds
большое воронье гнездо a big crow's nest
этот каменный многоэтажный дом this multi-story stone house

However, possessives in a series would be divided by a comma or by the conjunction и:

1. Его, ваш и мой дома нахо́дятся рядом.
His, your(,) and my houses are next to each other.

2. Пришли Серёжины, Ольгины и Нины родите́ли.
Sergei’s, Olga’s(,) and Nina’s parents came.

3. Зверолёв заранее осматривает волчья, лисьи и заячьи тропы.
A trapper examines wolf(,) fox(,) and rabbit trails beforehand.

4. В ящи́к стола лежали отца́вь, мате́рины и сестрины доце́нты, а моих доцентов не было.
In the little desk drawer lay father’s, brother’s, and sister’s documents, but my documents weren’t there.

Note: As a rule, a qualitative adjective precedes a relational adjective if both modify the same noun: американские электронные това́рьы, American electronic merchandise; длинный скорый поезд, long express train; разбитая просёлочная дорого́, dilapidated country road; сильный северный ветер, strong north wind; короткая летняя ночь, short summer night. Any possessive adjectives in the phrase come first: наш холодный северный климат, our cold northern climate; наши прекрасные шоссейные дорожи, your excellent highways; наши длинные зимние вечера, our long winter evenings.
d) Modifiers belonging to different semantic categories can be separated by a comma if they characterize a noun from a single point of view.

1. Небо также дождливое, серое, грустное.
   The sky is so rainy, gray, and sad. (= bad weather)

2. Большие, острые клыки.
   Big, sharp fangs. (= dangerous fangs)

3. Красные, сочные яблоки.
   Red, juicy apples. (= desirable apples)

   In such sentences, the conjunction и, and, can replace the comma: красные и сочные яблоки, red and juicy apples.

e) Adjectives that follow the noun they modify for emphasis are separated by a comma. In such cases, the comma represents the written equivalent of a special intonation and pause between the two adjectives in speech. Here are some examples:

1. Они встроили дом кирпичный, большой.
   They built a brick house, a big one.
   (Neutral style: Они встроили большой кирпичный дом. They built a big brick house.)

2. Меня поразили руки маленькие, старческие.
   I was struck by the hands, small and old.
   (Neutral style: Меня поразили маленькие старческие руки. I was struck by the small old hands.)

3. В городе построили дома ночные, красивые.
   New, beautiful houses were built in the city.
   (Neutral style: В городе построили ночные красивые дома. Pretty new houses were built in the city.)

   Note: In certain instances, no comma stands between two adjectives that follow the noun they modify. This is normally the case with the official names of types of plants and animals, which often contain postposed strings of adjectives: капуста цветная ранняя, early cauliflower, пшеница озимая морозостойкая, hardy winter wheat; ячмень дикий тибетский, wild Tibetan barley, астра ранняя махровая, early double aster.

f) Two or more modifiers used in predicative position are separated by commas regardless of whether or not their meanings are parallel. In the example below, the two adjectives are not parallel, but are separated by a comma simply because they are in predicative position:

Машина наша, новая.
The car is ours and it’s new.
Compare the same two adjectives preposed: наша новая машина, our new car. Here, no comma can be used because the two adjectives are not parallel and occur in front of the modified noun.

g) Sometimes a comma between two adjectives modifying a single noun can alter the meaning of the statement, as in the case of the following two sentences:

1. Дай другой красный карандаш (= ещё один красный карандаш).
   *Give me another red pencil.*

2. Дай дру́гой, кра́сный каранда́ш (= ещё один, но кра́сный).
   *Give me another pencil, a red one this time.*

   In the first sentence, дру́гой is a relative adjective and кра́сный a qualitative one; they are, therefore, not separated by a comma. In the second, both adjectives are qualitative and must be separated by a comma. If the second sentence were spoken aloud, there would be more of a pause between the adjectives, and the logical emphasis would fall on the adjective кра́сный, red.

h) A final type of parallel modifier occurs when the meaning of one adjective is clarified or intensified by a following adjective. In such a sentence, the conjunctions а именно, namely; or то есть, that is, i.e., could be added to emphasize the parallelism.

1. Шёл уны́лый, мороси́щий дождик (= уны́лый, то есть мороси́щий дождь).
   *Dreary, drizzling rain was falling (dreary because of the drizzle).*

2. Сухие, ста́рческие ру́ки (Сухие, то есть ста́рческие ру́ки).
   *Dry, old hands (dry because they belong to an old person).*

   To summarize, comma usage in strings of adjectival modifiers reflects fine semantic distinctions in the adjectives themselves and often serves stylistic purposes.

8.3. Use of the Comma to Separate Repeated Words

One or more repetitions of the same word are generally set off by a comma in Russian.

1. Éду, éду в чи́стом поле́ (Пушкін).
   *I keep driving through the open steppe.*

2. По Смоле́нской дорого́ — леса́, леса́, леса́ (Окуджа́ва).
   *Along the Smolensk road are trees, trees and more trees.*

3. Нет, нет! Э́то совсéм не так.
   *No, no! That's not the way it is at all.*
This type of lexical repetition is used for a stylistic purpose: to emphasize duration (first example), great quantity (second example), or to add emotional emphasis (third example). English also uses lexical repetition as a stylistic device, but less frequently than Russian.

Notes:

1) If the repeated word is meant to be followed by an expressive pause, then a dash may be used instead of a comma, as in the sentence below:

Уходи — и побystрее уходи.
Go away—and do it now!

The comma is preferred if there is no expressive pause.

2) Russian often creates compound words out of two repeated elements, such as éle-éle, barely; чyть-чyть, a tiny bit. In such cases, however, one of the repeated elements loses its primary stress. We will discuss such compounds in Chapter 15.

8.4. Punctuation with Parallel Sentence Elements Joined by a Simple Coordinating Conjunction

The rules for using commas with coordinating conjunctions in Russian are, for the most part, different from English, so pay special attention to this section.

a) If the coordinating conjunction и, and, is used to join two parallel elements, the comma must be omitted. Here are some examples:

1. Дни стояли тёплые и ласковые.
   The days were warm and gentle.
2. Всем было интересно и весело.
   Everyone was interested and happy.
3. Она грустила и скучала без вас.
   She’s sad and lonely without you.
4. Он улыбнулся и пошёл дальше.
   He smiled and walked away.

   The comma is likewise omitted when other coordinating conjunctions—such as да (= и), and, или/или, or, либо (= или), or—are used to join two parallel items. This rule resembles English.

1. Он любил только хоккей да (= и) бокс.
   He liked only hockey and boxing.
2. Нам редко встречались по пути сосны или ели.
   On the way we encountered an occasional pine or spruce.
3. Они договорились встретиться в субботу либо (= или) в воскресенье.
They agreed to meet on Saturday or Sunday.

b) Unlike English, the comma is always omitted if a coordinating conjunction joins the last two items in a longer series of three or more:

1. Красные, синие и жёлтые шары казались нам великолепными.
The red, blue(,) and yellow balloons seemed marvellous to us.

Russian does not allow a comma with the non-repeating coordinating conjunction и. One can write красные, синие, жёлтые or красные, синие и жёлтые but never *красные, синие, и жёлтые.

Russian punctuation differs from English on this point. In English, a comma may optionally precede a coordinating conjunction (and, or) that joins the last two items in a series of three or more. Either red, blue and yellow or red, blue, and yellow is correct.

Here are several more examples of items in a series where the final two items are joined by a coordinating conjunction.

2. Я могу послать ему письмо, открытку или телеграмму.
I can send him a letter, a post card(,) or a telegram.

3. Дети пошли, убрали со стола и пошли в парк.
The children ate, cleared the table(,) and went to the park.

4. В комнате тепло, светло и уютно.
The room feels warm, bright(,) and cozy.

---

**Note:** The abbreviations и др. (и другие), and others, и т.д. (и так далее), etc., and и т.п. (и тому подобное), and so forth, are never set off by commas in Russian, though the English “etc.” must be set off:

1. Наречия во-первых, во-вторых, в-третьих и т.д. пишутся через дефис.
The Russian adverbs, во-первых, во-вторых, в-третьих, etc., are hyphenated.

2. Газеты «Аргументы и факты», «Литературная газета» и др. остаются популярными для москвичей.
The newspapers Arguments and Facts, Literary Gazette(,) and others, remain popular with Muscovites.

3. Суббота — день игр, развлечений и т.п.
Saturday is a day of games, entertainments(,) and so forth.

c) If the items in a series consist of pairs joined by a coordinating conjunction, a comma separates each pair from the other pairs:

1. Слева и спрааа, спереди и сзади белёны стволы берёз.
Birch trunks gleamed white on the right and left, in front and behind.
2. Работы продолжались в холод и зной, днём и ночью.
   The work continued in cold and hot weather, day and night.

3. В то время я любил театр и литературу, живопись и музыку.
   At that time I liked drama and literature, painting and music.

   As can be seen from the translation, English uses the comma in precisely the same way.

d) A comma is required before или, or, when the conjunction means то есть, that is; or иными словами, in other words. In this function, или introduces an appositive and does not connect two different items. Therefore, a phrase introduced by или in the meaning то есть is set off by the paired comma.

1. Только тушканчик, или земляной заяц, еще бодрястует.
   Only the gerbil, or ground rabbit, was still active.

2. По вечерам он любил читать мемуары, или воспоминания.
   In the evenings(,) he liked to read memoirs, or remembrances.

3. Газовая оболочка планеты Венеры, или её атмосфера, была впервые обнаружена Ломоносовым.
   Venus's gaseous envelope, or atmosphere, was first discovered by Lomonosov.

4. Расселины, или глубокие трещины на земле, извивались горными змеями.
   Crevasses, or deep cracks in the earth, twisted like mountain snakes.

5. Морены, или ряды валунов и обломков скал, тянутся по сторонам ледника.
   Moraines, or rows of boulders and chunks torn from the cliffs, stretched on both sides of the glacier.

   Notice that a pair of commas enclose such a phrase from both sides:

6. Формалин, или водный раствор формальдегида, является сильным обеззараживающим средством.
   Formalin, or solution of formaldehyde, is a strong antiseptic.

   On the other hand, if the conjunction introduces a new item rather than another name for the same item, then no comma is used.

7. В таких лесах преобладает сосна или пихта.
   In such forests(,) pine or fir predominate.

   English has the same rule for comma usage with the conjunction or.
Exercise 8.1

Rewrite the sentences below, adding commas where necessary. Pay attention to the italicized phrases, which contain parallel sentence elements.

1. **Весной поле вспахали и засеяли.**
   In the spring, the field was plowed and seeded.

2. **Дай мне какую-нибудь книгу журнал или газету.**
   Give me a book, magazine, or newspaper.

3. **Её пугали моро́зы и вы́ги тайга и непроходи́мые боло́та.**
   She was frightened by the freezing weather and snowstorms, by the taiga and impenetrable swamps.

4. **Большай ры́жая соба́ка несла́сь нам навстрéчу.**
   A big reddish dog raced toward us.

5. **Я поёду теперь на Дальний Восток либо на север (Ажаев).**
   Now I’ll go to the Far East or to the north.

6. **Степь или безлесная равнина сейчас нам не каза́лась вымершей.**
   The steppe, or treeless plain, no longer seemed lifeless to us now.

7. **Кругом виднелись встре́ченные растрéпанные ли́ца.**
   All around could be seen alarmed and confused faces.

8. **Над каналами висели чёрные железные мосты.**
   Above the canals hung black, iron bridges.

9. **День был жаркий светлый лучеза́рный.**
   The day was hot, light, and radiant.

10. **Большая железная пёчка стояла посреди палаты.**
    A big iron stove stood in the middle of the ward.

11. **Сходи купи хлеба и булочек.**
    Go buy some bread and buns.

12. **Шёл длинный товари́нный поезд.**
    A long freight train was travelling along.

13. **Машина остановилась около низкого кирпичного дома.**
    The car stopped near a squat brick house.

14. **Длинный узкий флаг развевался на мачте.**
    A long, narrow flag fluttered on the mast.

15. **Пойду почитаю немногого.**
    I’ll go read a bit.

16. **В глубине сада стоял красивый деревянный дом.**
    In the depth of the garden there stood a beautiful wooden house.

17. **Для публичной речи типичной формой является монолог в виде статей, лекций и т. п.**
    The style most typical for public speaking is monologue in the form of articles, lectures, etc.
18. Сыро́й тёплый неосвеща́ющий ве́тер продолжа́л дуть. 
A damp, warm(,) and stale wind continued to blow.

19. Квартйра была большая светлая и чистая. 
The apartment was big, bright(,) and clean.

20. Лу́нный я́сный ве́чер был прекра́сён (Че́хов). 
The clear, moonlit night was beautiful.

8.5. Punctuation in Parallel Sentences (однородные предложения) 
Combined into a Compound Sentence

So far we have only discussed the comma usage with parallel elements in simple sentences. Commas are also used to separate the parallel sentences inside a compound sentence, as in the following example:

1. Солнце сéло, стáло прохлáдно. 
The sun set; it became cool.

   Unlike the situation with parallel sentence elements, however, the comma remains between parallel sentences even if a coordinating conjunction is added:

2. Солнце сéло, и стáло прохлáдно. 
The sun set(,) and it became cool.

   Here are several more examples of the comma plus coordinating conjunction used to join parallel sentences.

3. Послышался звук шагóв, дверь распахнулась, и в комната вошёл плотный мужчи́на. 
The sound of steps was heard, the door flew open, and into the room walked a heavy-set man.

4. Лишь где-то колесо гремит, да в саду соловей свистит (Ни́китин). 
Only a wheel rattles somewhere and a nightingale sings in the garden.

5. Ольга, должны быть, ушла из библиотеки к тому времени, и́ли вы её там не заметили. 
Olga must have left the library by then, or you didn’t notice her there.

   Here, once again, comma usage differs sharply in Russian and English. In Russian, no comma can be used at all when a coordinating conjunction joins two sentence elements, but a comma must be used when a conjunction joins two parallel sentences. In English, the comma is a stylistic option whenever a conjunction joins parallel items, be they sentence elements or parallel sentences.

   **Note:** There are a few systematic exceptions to the rule given above. No comma is used before the coordinating conjunctions и, and; да, and; и́ли, or; либо, or, in the following types of compound sentences:
a) When the parts of the compound sentence have a **common member** (общеий член), no comma can be used with the coordinating conjunction. In the sentence below the paired sentences are italicized and their common member is underlined.

1. **По улицам мча́лись автомоби́ли и неслёсся трамва́й.**
   *Along the streets(,) cars rushed and tramcars sped.*

   Why is there no comma? Because the two simple sentences, **мча́лись автомоби́ли** and **неспёсся трамва́й**, share a single adverbial modifier, **по улицам**. When two otherwise separable sentences share a modifier, it prevents their separation by a comma. If each coordinate sentence contained a separate modifier, a comma would be needed to join them. Below is a compound sentence that has no common member:

2. **По улицам мча́лись автомоби́ли, и по тротуа́рам быстро шли пешеходы.**
   *Cars sped down the streets(,) and pedestrians walked quickly along the sidewalks.*

   Each coordinate sentence contains its own separate adverbial modifier: **по улицам** in the first, and **по тротуа́рам** in the second. Therefore, the comma plus coordinating conjunction must be used to coordinate them into a compound sentence.

   Here are a few more examples of compound sentences with one or more common members and the coordinating conjunction **и** used without a comma:

1. **За Днепр ом синеют леса и мелькает прояснявшееся ночное небо** (Гайдар).
   *Beyond the Dniepr(,) the woods look blue and clear patches of sky flash by.*

2. **В городском саду по соседству играл оркестр и пел хор пёсенников** (Чехов).
   *In the city park nearby(,) an orchestra played and a choir of singers sang.*

3. **Лес ещё горел в глубине и по сёруму небу тянулись ровные стрёны дыма** (Паустовский).
   *Fire still burned somewhere in the forest and even streams of smoke stretched across the gray sky.*

4. **Уже стемнело и начинало холодать** (Тургенев).
   *It already got dark and began to cool off.*

5. **Его здесь никто не любит и все боятся** (Гончаров).
   *Here no one likes him and everyone is afraid of him.*

   As the translations above show, the same rule exists in English: no comma can be used with the conjunction **and** when the two parts of a compound sentence share a common member.
b) No comma is used with the coordinating conjunction in compound sentences composed of a pair of noun phrases without predicates.

1. Побег из плена и возвращение домой.
   Escape from captivity and return home.

2. Хохот и шум.
   Raucous laughter and noise.

3. Смех и слёзы.
   Laughter and tears.

4. Радость и разочарование.
   Joy and disappointment.

c) No comma is used with the coordinating conjunction in compound sentences composed of two questions, exclamations, or imperatives.

1. Кто они и как их зовут?
   Who are they and what are their names?

2. Какое свежее утро и какой чистый воздух!
   What a fresh morning and what clear air!

3. Сидеть тихо или вон отсюда!
   Sit still or get out of here!

4. Убрать в комнате и накрыть на стол.
   Clean up the room and set the table.

8.6. The Comma plus Simple Adversative Conjunction

A comma is required before an adversative conjunction (противительный союз): а, but; же, but (= а), но, but, however, да, but (= но), and однако (= но), however, (но) всё же, but anyway, зато (= но), but, nonetheless. The comma is obligatory with these adversative conjunctions, regardless of whether the items being juxtaposed are parallel sentences or parallel items within a single sentence.

1. Мал золотник, да дорог (Пословица).
   Big things come in small packages. (Proverb.)
   (Literally: A gold nugget is small but expensive.)

2. У горизонта вспыхивали молнии, а над нами ещё сияли звёзды.
   Lightning flashed on the horizon, but above us the stars still shone.

3. Было ветрено, но дети всё же пошли в парк.
   It was windy, but the kids went to the park anyway.

4. На улице шёл дождь, однако нё было холодно.
   It was raining outside(,) but it was not cold.

5. Скоро сказка сказывается, да не скоро дело делается (Пословица).
   Easier said than done. (Talk is quick but work takes time.)
6. В комнатах тепло и светло, на дворе же стужа и темнота.
   *It's warm and bright inside, while outside it's bitterly cold and dark.*

7. В короткие зимние дни здесь рано спускается сумрак, затем в начале лета неделями длится немеркующие белые ночи.
   *Dusk comes early during the short winter days here, but at the beginning of summer the unfading white nights last for weeks.*

8. Путники долго блуждали в темноте, но всё же им удалось добраться до реки вовремя.
   *The travellers wandered aimlessly in the darkness for a long time but still reached the river on time.*

9. Разница небольшая, но важная.
   *The difference is small but important.*

   As can be seen from the above examples, the English conjunction *but* takes a comma as a stylistic option, whereas commas are obligatory with any adversative conjunction in Russian.

**8.7. Commas that Introduce Repetitions of a Conjunction**

So far, we have examined the use of the comma with various simple conjunctions. The rules for using commas with repeating conjunctions are different:

a) If parallel items are divided by the repeating conjunction и ... и, *both ... and*, the rules for using commas are complex.

   i) **A single pair of parallel items.** No comma is used to separate two parallel items joined with the paired conjunction и ... и, *both ... and* (as well as its colloquial synonym да ... да, *both ... and*) when both of the following two conditions pertain: the joined items are simple words and there is no special need to enumerate them as separate entities.

1. И плещется и мечется буйная осенняя тайга (Борисова).
   *The wild autumn taiga shimmers and vibrates.*

   As you can see, no comma is used between the two parallel verbs плещется and мечется. Neither word is extended by any modifier, and both verbs describe the same thing—the tangible vitality of the forest.

   In the next example, a comma is used with the paired conjunction и ... и, *both ... and* because one of the items is extended:

2. Срубленные деревья придавили собою и траву, и мелкий кустарник.
   *The felled trees crushed both the grass and the small bushes.*

   The comma is obligatory because the noun кустарник is modified by the adjective мелкий. If either of the two parallel items are extended in any way, then a comma must be used with the repeating conjunction и ... и, regardless of other considerations.
Even if the two parallel items are simple words, a comma may still be used with the repeating conjunction и ... и as a stylistic device to emphasize that the enumerated items are separate and different. This technique is used in the sentence below:

3. Бушу́ет полу́ая водá, шуму́т и глухо́, и проти́жно (Бу́нин).
   The spring floodwaters rage with a dull and protracted roar.

   Stylistic variation in comma usage is thus confined to instances where the repeating conjunction и ... и joins a pair of simple words. Let’s look at another example:

4. В кóмнате нахо́дился и дёти, и взро́слые.
   There were children as well as adults in the room.

   The same sentence without special emphasis would have no comma:

5. В кóмнате нахо́дилась и дёти и взро́слые.
   There were children and adults (= people of all ages) in the room.

   **Note:** Set expressions containing the paired conjunction и ... и, both ... and, are not divided by commas. Such expressions are not really lists of separate entities. For example, the expression и день и ночь, which literally means “both day and night” is used to mean всё время, бесперерывно, all the time, constantly, as in the following sentence:

   И день и ночь лю́ди труду́лись в кóпях.
   People labored in the mines day and night (= continuously).

   No comma is used in such idiomatic expressions because the paired items represent a single semantic whole rather than two separate items. Below is a list of more such expressions. They should simply be memorized:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>and</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Literal translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>и стар и млад</td>
<td>everyone</td>
<td>(both young and old)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>и так и этак</td>
<td>in various ways</td>
<td>(both that way and this)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>и так и сяк</td>
<td>in various ways</td>
<td>(both that way and this)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>и там и сям</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td>(both here and there)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>и тот и друго́й</td>
<td>all, every one</td>
<td>(this one and the other)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>и хóлод и гóлод</td>
<td>all sorts of misfortune</td>
<td>(both cold and hunger)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>и смех и гóре</td>
<td>laughter through tears</td>
<td>(both laughter and tears)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Also: о том о сём</td>
<td>about various things</td>
<td>(lit., about that and this).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ii) **Three or more parallel items.** A comma must be used whenever the repeating conjunction и (or да) joins more than three or more parallel items. The comma cannot be left out in such cases of multiple items even as a stylistic option.
1. В молодости он увлекался и живописью, и графикой, и музыкой.
   In his youth he was interested in painting, in drawing, and in music.

2. Иней подошл уже и на скатах крыш, и у колодца, и на перилах балкона, и на листве (А. Толстой).
   The frost lay for a long time on the rooftops, and by the well, and on the balcony railing and foliage.

   The comma is likewise obligatory in sentences where the conjunction и (or да the meaning and) is repeated only twice in a list of three or more items.

3. Пришлося нам с братом, да с Иваном, да с его сестрой вернуться.
   We had to return with my brother, with Ivan, and with his sister.

4. Я люблю эти тёмные ночи, эти звёзды, и клёны, и пруд (Бунин).
   I love these dark nights, these stars, and these maples, and this pond.

   Repetition of the conjunction in this sentence emphasizes the process of enumeration. The comma must be used with each repetition of the conjunction even if the joined items are single words.

   **Note:** A comma is not used when simple coordinating conjunctions happen to appear more than once in the same sentence. Look at the following sentence, where each use of the conjunction и serves a separate function:

   Мы муčились от жары и жа́жды лётом и замерzáли зимо́й...
   We suffered from heat and thirst in summer and froze in winter...

   The two functions of the conjunction и in this sentence are not parallel. The first conjunction connects two parallel objects of a preposition, от жары и жажды. The second connects two parallel verbs, муčились и замерzáли.

   Here are more examples with two distinct pairs of parallel items:

1. Я стал посещать музеи и галереи и читать книги (Чехов).
   I began to visit museums and galleries and read books.
   (First pair: музеи и галереи; second pair: посещать и читать.)

2. Вдали... пестрёли и цвели луга и нивы золотые (Пушкин).
   In the distance... meadows and golden fields of grain glittered and bloomed.
   (First pair: пестрёли и цвели; second pair: луга и нивы)

3. Он глубоко вздохнул и почувствовал вкус речного воздуха и лёгкий освежающий запах тины (Николаева).
   He sighed deeply and tasted the river air and the light, invigorating smell of the river mud.
   (First pair: вздохнул и почувствовал; second pair: вкус и запах)
Each simple conjunction in the examples above has its own separate and unrelated function. Because these sentences do not contain any actual repeating conjunctions, they require no commas.

b) Parallel items in a sentence must be set off by commas whenever they are joined with the following paired or repeating disjunctive conjunctions: 
   либо ... либо, either ... or; не то ... не то, either ... or; ни ... ни, neither ... nor; то ... то, then ... then. Unlike the situation with ни ... ни, a comma is obligatory with repeating disjunctive conjunctions, regardless of whether they join two or more than two items.

1. Он не любил ни отменять своих намерений, ни откладывать их на долгий срок.
   He liked neither changing his intentions nor postponing them for long.

2. В это весеннее утро то лил дождь, то весело сияло солнце.
   That spring morning it poured rain one minute and was cheerfully sunny the next.

3. Он либо делал что-нибудь по хозяйству, либо читал.
   He either was doing something around the house or he was reading.

4. He то он нас не понимал, не то не слушал.
   Either he didn’t understand us or he wasn’t listening.

5. Он то бежал, то шёл, то изредка останавливался.
   He would run, then walk, then occasionally stop.

A disjunctive conjunction may occur twice or several times in the same sentence, in which case a comma must accompany each repetition. Pay attention to the fact that there exists a significant difference between Russian and English here. In English, repeating conjunctions tend to be used instead of, not together with, commas.

Note: A number of idiomatic expressions containing the paired conjunction ни ... ни, neither ... nor, cannot be divided by commas. Below is a list of some of these expressions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Literal translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ни туда ни сюда</td>
<td>nowhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ни то ни сё</td>
<td>so-so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ни с того ни с сего</td>
<td>out of the blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ни дать ни взять</td>
<td>precisely, exactly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ни рыба ни мясо</td>
<td>something odd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ни жив ни мёртв</td>
<td>terribly frightened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ни пуха ни пера</td>
<td>good luck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ни свет ни заря</td>
<td>at the crack of dawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ни назад ни вперёд</td>
<td>at a standstill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(neither there nor here)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(neither one nor the other)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(neither from that nor this)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(neither give nor take)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(neither fish nor meat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(neither dead nor olive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(neither down nor feather)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(neither light nor dawn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(neither forward nor back)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Below are examples of a few of these idiomatic expressions:

1. Жизнь моё в Петербúрге ни то ни сё (Пу́шкин).
   My life in Petersburg is somewhere in between good and bad.

2. Лю́ди так себé, ни то ни сё (Гóголь).
   People are just so-so, neither good nor bad.

3. За́втра у него́ экза́мен, и мы́ пожела́ли ему́ ни пу́ха ни пера́.
   He has an exam tomorrow and we wished him good luck.

4. Он сказа́л это ни с того́ ни с сего́. Ска́занное не имело соверше́нно
   никакого отношения к дёлу.
   He said it right out of the blue. His words had no relation at all to what was
   going on.

5. Они́ встáли ни све́т ни зарé и сра́зу засобирáлись в путь.
   They got up at the crack of dawn and started packing at once.

6. Лари́сси наши́нник оказался так себé, ни ры́ба ни мя́со — сра́зу не
   отгада́ть, что́ за человéк (Па́нова).
   Larisa's choice turned out to be so-so, neither fish nor fowl—someone you
   can't size up right off.

7. Он ни мужéк, ни ба́рин, ни ры́ба ни мя́со; про́шлое у него́ гóрькое…
   (Чéхов).
   He's neither peasant nor landowner, fish nor fowl; his past is tragic.

   The last sentence contains the set expression ни ры́ба ни мя́со, which has
   no comma, and the non-idiomatic pair ни мужéк, ни ба́рин, which does require
   a comma.

Exercise 8.2

Add commas to the following sentences where necessary. (The Russian punctu-
ation will often differ from the English).

1. Стал накра́пывать дождь и де́ти ушли́ в дом.
   Rain began to sprinkle and the kids went into the house.

2. Ули́ца бы́ла́ узкая но зелёная.
   The street was narrow but green.

3. И брат и сестра́ пришли проводи́ть егó.
   Brother and sister both came to see him off.

4. Како́й мра́чный лес и как сь́ро тут!
   What a gloomy forest and how damp it is here!

5. Мáша и Сáша тихо сидéли и жда́ли.
   Masha and Sasha sat quietly and waited.
6. Всё что-то крича ли ему а он ничего не слышал.
Everyone was shouting something to him, but he heard nothing.

7. Щелест листьев возни птиц слышались в лесу.
Rustling leaves and raucous birds could be heard in the woods.

8. В лесу мне был знаком каждый бугорок каждая полянка и каждая ложбинка.
In the woods I knew every hill, every clearing, and every little gully.

9. Он написал этот рассказ год назад но не опубликовал его.
He wrote that story a year ago but didn’t publish it.

10. И старый и малый отступили дальше и всё глядели и глядели вверх (Пришвин).
Both young and old backed off and just stared and stared at the sky.

11. Небо прояснилось солнце стал сильнее припекать и мы решили сходить на море.
The sky cleared, the sun began to burn more intensely, and we decided to take a trip to the sea.

12. Входи в природу другом хозяином но не жестоким а заботливым и чутким.
Meet nature as friend and master, not as a cruel master, but rather as one who is caring and sensitive.

13. Цветы могут вам рассказать о красоте о времени о погоде.
Flowers can tell you about beauty, about time, about the weather.

14. Занавес поднялся и начался спектакль.
The curtain rose and the show began.

15. Месяц светит да не греет.
The moon shines but gives no warmth.

16. Нужно бы в Москву съездить за деньгами да денег нет на дорогу (Чехов).
I need to go to Moscow for the money but have no money for the trip.

17. Дождь смыл листвы деревьев и развёл туманную дымку.
The rain washed the tree leaves and dispersed the foggy haze.

18. Не то мысли не то воспоминания не то мечты бродили в его голове.
Thoughts, memories(,) or perhaps dreams wandered in his head.

19. То здесь то там опадают осенние листья и устилают землю.
Here and there the autumn leaves fall and carpet the earth.

20. Чем он занимается и когда он появился в этих краях?
What’s he up to and when did he show up here?

21. Синицы очень умны и очень любопытны.
Titmice are very smart and very curious.
22. Сини́цы умны и они́ очень любопы́тны и это губит их.
Titimice are smart but very curious and that is their downfall.

23. В окна с улицы лился глухой шум и летела пыль.
Into the windows from the street came a dull roar and flying dust.

24. Он сто́йл ни жив ни мёртв.
He stood neither dead nor alive.

25. А́нна прие́дет к нам на Рождество́ льбо мы к ней пое́дем после Новогó гóда.
Anna will visit us for Christmas or we’ll visit her after New Year’s.

26. Солнечный жар и блеск уже́ сменя́лись прохла́дой но́чи и нея́рким све́том молодого меся́ца (Л. Толстой).
The sun’s heat and glare had already been replaced by the night’s coolness and the dim light of the crescent moon.

27. В сыро́м ночнóм тумáне всё лес да лес да лес (Блок).
In the dank night fog there stood trees, trees(), and more trees.

28. Ни раба́ ни пове́лы́теля дру́же не на́до (Гончаро́в).
Friendship requires neither slave nor master.

29. Речь её лила́сь тяже́ло но свобо́дно (Горький).
Her speech flowed heavily but freely.

30. На язы́ке мёд а под язы́ком лёд (Послóвица).
A honey tongue but a heart of gall. (Proverb.)

This completes our discussion of the comma, the most frequently used mark of internal punctuation in Russian and English. Don’t forget that commas have two main sets of functions: They may divide sentence elements, and in this role the comma often accompanies a coordinating conjunction such as и, and, or но but. Or a pair of commas may enclose some sentence element. Remember also that Russian sets off all dependent clauses from the main clause, while English does so only for some special reason.
Chapter 9
The Semicolon (Точка с запятой)

The semicolon replaces the comma of separation (запятая разделительная) in certain contexts. This practice is less common in Russian than English, and you will probably not use it very often in your own writing. In fact, the semicolon appears infrequently enough in Russian that we felt it necessary to cite a source for each example of its usage given below.

9.1. The Semicolon with Extended Items in a Series

Items in a series which are internally complex or rather distant in meaning from one another sometimes have their own internal punctuation. In such cases they are called extended items in a series (распространённые однородные члены) and normally separated by a semicolon, as in this passage by the writer Ivan Turgenev:

1. То под забором Стёпушка сидит и редьку глохнет, иль морковь сосёт, иль грязный кочан капусты под себя крощет; то ведро с водою куда-то тащит и кряхтят; то под горшочком огонь раскладывает; то у себя в чуланчике деревянкой постукивает.

First Styopa would sit under a fence and gnaw on a radish or suck on a carrot; then tear the leaves off a dirty head of cabbage; then carry a bucket of water off somewhere, huffing and puffing; then make a fire under a pot; then make banging noises with a piece of wood in the pantry.

Recall that commas normally separate simple items in a series (однородные члены). In the sentence below, which is a simplified adaptation of the Turgenev sentence given above, commas replace the semicolons:

2. То Стёпушка сидит под забором и редьку глохнет, то он ведро с водою куда-то тащит, то под горшком огонь раскладывает.

Styopa would sit under the fence and gnaw on a radish, then carry a bucket of water off somewhere, then make a fire under a pot.

Here is another example of a semicolon used to separate extended items in a series:

3. Но куклы даже в эти годы Татьяна в руки не брала; про вести города, про моды беседы с нею не вела (Пушкин).

But even in those years Tatyana didn’t play with a doll; she didn’t talk with it about fashions, or about the latest news from the city.
Using commas rather than semicolons to separate extended items in a series might cause confusion, since each item contains its own commas.

9.2. The Semicolon plus Coordinating Conjunction in Clauses with Internal Punctuation

When a compound sentence containing a coordinating conjunction such as но, a, but; и, and, is itself a part of an even larger compound sentence, a semicolon rather than a comma normally separates it from the rest of the sentence.

1. В тишие июльские дни кра́ски все смьягчены, светлы, но не я́рки; на всём лежит печать како́й-то трогательности и нёжности (Турге́нев).
   During the quiet days of July the colors are all softened and light, but not bright; everything displays the mark of gentleness and sensitivity.

2. Почти́ ка́ждый ве́чер, попо́зже, они уезжали кудá-нибудь за город, в Ореа́дну или на водопа́д и прогулка удавалась, впечатления неизмéнно всéкий раз бы́ли прекра́сны, величáвы (Чéхов).
   Almost every evening, a bit later, they would take a ride somewhere outside town, to Oreadna or to the waterfall; and there would be time for a walk, and their impressions each time without fail were beautiful and sublime.

3. По расчищенному месту побежали изгороди, стáли скирды и стога́, разраста́лись маленькие дь́мные юртёнки; наконец, тóчно побéдное знáмя, на хóлмике из сере́динь посёлка выстреляла к нéбу колокóльни (Королё́нко).
   Along the cleared space ran hedges, and windrows and haystacks rose up, and small, smoky tents spread across the land; finally, on a hill in the center of the village, the church steeple shot up to the sky like a victory banner.

4. Я́ков наслажда́лся своéй побéдой, как дитя́; всё éго лицó преобразýлось (Л. Толстóй).
   Yakov enjoyed his victory like a child; his whole face was transformed.

9.3. The Semicolon Used to Set off Extended Dependent Clauses in a Series

Dependent clauses of all kinds are normally set off by commas (запять́е выделительные) in Russian. However, a series of dependent clauses that already contain internal punctuation tend to be set off by semicolons. Below is an example of this usage:

1. Бы́л тот предно́чный час, когда́ стирайтся очертáния, линии, кра́ски, расстоя́ния; когда́ ещё дневной свет пüтается, неразрь́вно сцепи́вши́сь с ночной́м (А. Чéхов).
   It was that twilight hour when shapes, outlines, colors and distances dissolve; when daylight fails and merges with the night.
Modern Russian authors tend to prefer shorter sentences with less internal complexity, which is why all of our previous examples were taken from the classics of Russian literature.

**Note:** The точка с запятой is used less frequently than its English counterpart. The reasons for this become clear when we examine the three alternative ways of punctuating parallel sentences:

a) In either Russian or English, parallel sentences may be punctuated as completely separate sentences:

1. **Небо стемнело. Подул ветер. Листья полетели по траве.**
   *The sky darkened. The wind blew. Leaves blew across the grass.*

   Writing a string of short sentences chops up the narrative, making each event seem like a separate whole.

b) The short sentences may be formed into a compound sentence, with a comma separating each item. If the last two sentences are joined by и, and, the comma must remain (though no comma can precede и when it joins parallel sentence elements):

2. **Небо стемнело, подул ветер, и листья полетели по траве.**
   *The sky darkened, wind began, and leaves flew across the grass.*

   In English, the conjunction and may also stand between the last two sentences in a series, but the comma before it is optional. Stylistically, creating a compound sentence serves to unify the narrated events into a more closely knit whole.

c) If no coordinating conjunction is used to join two parallel sentences, a Russian author normally separates them with a comma (less often, with a semicolon). By contrast, an English writer prefers the semicolon to the comma in such contexts:

3. **Константин поставил палатку и развёл костёр, Альбина пошла к реке за водой.**
   *Konstantin set up a tent and made a fire; Albina went to the river for water.*

   Thus, although the semicolon links extended items in a series in both Russian and English, the frequent use by Russian of the comma rather than a semicolon to link non-extended items in a series contrasts with English and makes the semicolon a far less common mark of punctuation in Russian.
Exercise 9.1

Fill in the blanks with whatever internal punctuation is necessary. (Some of the sentences below may not require any internal punctuation at all.)

1. Небо прояснилось __ солнце вышло из-за облаков.
The sky cleared; the sun came out from behind the clouds.

2. Небо прояснилось __ и солнце вышло из-за облаков.
The sky cleared and the sun came out from behind the clouds.

3. Каждое утро, на восходе солнца, она уходила далеко в лес, на полянку, сидела там подольгу, возвращалась радостная и довольная __ прогулка доставляла её огромное удовольствие и придавала ей сил.
Every morning, at sunrise, she went deep into the forest, to a meadow, sat there a long while, returned happy and content; the walk gave her great pleasure and much strength.

4. Некоторые гости уже выходили __ другие входили.
Some guests were already leaving; others were entering.

5. Был тот вечерний час, когда стираются очертания зданий, деревьев __ когда ещё дневной свет пугается, неразрывно сцепившись с ночным.
It was that evening hour when the outlines of houses and trees dissolve, when daylight gets lost and mingles with the night.

6. Горел дом __ к небу поднимался чёрный дым __ на улице бегали люди.
A house was burning; black smoke rose to the sky; people ran about in the street.

7. Горел дом __ к небу поднимался чёрный дым __ и на улице бегали люди.
A house was burning, black smoke rose to the sky, and people ran about in the street.

8. Дети ещё спали __ родители уже вставали.
The kids were still asleep; the parents were already getting up.

9. Дети __ и родители ещё спали.
The kids and parents were still asleep.

10. В лесу весело щебетали птицы __ из двора доносился детский смех.
The birds chirped cheerfully in the forest; children’s laughter rang out from the courtyard.
Chapter 10
The Colon (Двоеточие)

There are only a few contexts which require a colon in Russian, but they are important. In general, the use of the Russian colon is similar to English.

10.1. The Colon Used to Introduce a Series
The colon is used to introduce a series of items.

1. Нас было трое: мой сестра, её подруга и я.
   There were three of us: my sister, her friend(,) and I.

2. Во время путешествия по России мы посетили крупнейшие города, а именно: Москву, Санкт-Петербург, Волгоград, Новосибирск, Иркутск и Владивосток.
   During the trip through Russia we visited the largest cities, that is: Moscow, St. Petersburg, Volgograd, Novosibirsk, Irkutsk and Vladivostok.

Note: A generalizing word such as сле́дующие, сле́дующее, the following, often precedes the colon:

1. С собой им пришлось взять сле́дующие вещи: вещмешки, палатку, надувную ло́дку, газовую горе́лку и несколько других необходимо́ых веще́й.
   They had to take along the following things: backpacks, tent, dingy, gas stove(,) and a few other necessities.

2. Для этого мы сде́лали сле́дующее: успе́ли животное, погрузи́ли на маши́ну и отвезли в ветбо́льницу.
   For this we did the following: tranquilized the animal, put it into the vehicle(,) and took it to the veterinary clinic.

However, the colon may introduce a series even without any generalizing word, as in the following example:

3. На конференции с докладами выступили: два студента с физико-математического факультета, декан филологического факультета и заместитель ре́ктора по науке.
   At the conference(,) papers were presented by: two students from the math and physics department, the chair of the language department, and the assistant dean of the science college.
The use of a colon without an introductory, generalizing word is common in business style.

10.2. The Colon Used to Explain the Reason for an Action

The colon can be used to clarify or elaborate upon whatever is described in the previous clause. In such sentences the colon could be replaced by потому что, because, or a synonymous conjunction. In Russian, the first word after the colon is not capitalized; in English, the first word may optionally be capitalized if the phrase can stand as a complete sentence.

1. Сержусь на самого себя: сам кругом виноват.
   a. I'm mad at myself because it's all my fault.
   b. I'm mad at myself: it's all my fault.
   c. I'm mad at myself: It's all my fault.

2. Найвен, кто в любви искал покоя: в любви покоя нет.
   Naive is he who would seek peace in love, for in love there is no peace.

10.3. The Colon Used to Introduce Quoted Material after Reporting Words

The colon is also used to introduce a quotation of someone else's words or thoughts incorporated into the structure of a sentence. In Russian, a colon must be used to introduce this material regardless of whether there is any introductory word. The first example below contains the introductory word слеющуюшее, the following; the second sentence contains no introductory word:

1. Потом он сказал слеющуюшее: «С этим я согласиться не могу».
   Then he said the following: "I cannot agree with this."

2. Он сказал: «С этим я согласиться не могу».
   He said, "I cannot agree with this."

   In English, however, a colon introduces quoted material only in cases where an introductory word such as the following is present; if such a word is lacking, a comma rather than a colon must be used (as the English translation of the second sentence illustrates).

   **Note:** If the quoted material is a complete sentence, it begins with a capital. This is true of Russian and English.

   Below are more examples of quoted sentences introduced into a reporting sentence by a colon:

1. В марте 1820 года поэт Жуковский подарил А.С. Пушкину портрет с надписью: «Победителю-ученику от побеждённого учителя».
   In March, 1820, the poet Zhukovsky gave A.S. Pushkin a portrait with the inscription, "To the student victor from the vanquished teacher."
2. Шве́йцár порази́л его́ словáми: «Не прика́зано прини́мáть».
   The porter stunned him with the words, “I can’t allow you in.”

3. А он отвё́тил: «Нет, не пойду́ я тудá».  
   But he answered, “No, I won’t go there.”

**Note:** Notice that the period follows the closing quotation mark in Russian but precedes it in English. For a complete discussion of punctuation in connection with quoted material, see Chapter 14.

### 10.4. The Colon Used to Introduce Words Describing a Vivid Impression

Occasionally, a colon is used to introduce a vivid description of something perceived by the senses. No quotation marks are necessary and no capital letter is used after the colon.

1. Тут откры́лась карти́на до́вольно занимáтельная: ширóкая сáкля,  
   кры́ша кóторой опи́ралась на два закопчённые столбá, бы́ла полно́ наро́да (Лёрмётов).  
   Here a rather interesting scene came into view: a wide cabin with a roof supported by two sooty pillars was filled with people.

2. И тут онá уви́дили: изчё́зла бéлая фигу́ра.  
   And there they saw it: the white figure had vanished.

3. Я знаю́: в вaшем сёрдце есть и гордость, и прямáя чести́ (II.).  
   This I know: In your heart there is both pride and direct honesty.

   Use of the colon to introduce a vivid description is encountered more frequently in Russian; in English, an introductory word must be present whenever the colon is used for this purpose (which is why we added the word “this” to the third translation above).

**Note:** A dash may be used in similar contexts to denote a sudden or unexpected impression. The dash in this function is particularly common in children’s literature or narratives with a similarly familiar, colloquial flavor.

1. Она́ пошли́ дальше. Видéт — сто́йт избóшка на ку́рых нóжках.  
   She walked farther and saw a hut standing on chicken legs.

2. Вéшли тут де́душка да бáбушка. Видéт — кóроб сто́йт.  
   Then Grandma and Grandpa came outside and saw a big basket standing there.

Other expressive uses of the dash are described in the next chapter.
Exercise 10.1

Rewrite the following sentences, adding a colon where necessary.

1. Я тебе определённо скажу у тебя есть талант.
   I'll definitely tell you this: you've got talent.

2. Она не могла спать в ту ночь было слишком душно и жарко.
   She couldn't sleep that night because it was too stuffy and hot.

3. Отец сдержал свое слово ровно через год он вернулся домой.
   Father kept his word: in exactly a year he returned home.

4. Я внимательно поглядел вокруг все лица выражали напряженное вниманье.
   I looked around carefully: everyone's face expressed intense attentiveness.

5. Он взглянул на часы было без четверти десять.
   he looked at the clock: it was 9:45.

6. Детей очень огорчила весть они любили своего учителя.
   The news really upset the kids because they loved their teacher.

7. Пора спать уже двенадцать часов.
   It's time to sleep because it's already twelve o'clock.

8. Взглянув на часы, он сказал «Об этом поговорим позже».
   Looking at the clock, he said, “We'll talk about that later.”

9. Коробка та волшебная в ней скатерть самобранныя, когда ни попала, напоит.
   That box is enchanted because it contains a magic tablecloth, and whenever
   you wish, it will provide food and drink.

10. Мальчик покраснел и сказал «Нет, я не ел».
    The boy blushed and said, “I didn’t eat it.”

11. В комнате было совсем мало мебели стул, стол и кровать.
    Very little furniture was in the room: a chair, table, and bed.

12. На доске было написано «Поздравляем с Новым годом!».
    On the blackboard was written, “Happy New Year!”

13. В этой местности в лесах преобладают хвойные породы деревьев ель, сосна, пихта, кедр.
    Conifers predominate in the local forests: spruce, pine, fir, and cedar.

14. Я перевернул фото и прочел «Ялта. Лето 1913 года».
    I turned the photograph over and read, “Yalta. Summer, 1913.”

15. Мы знали он не подведет нас.
    This we knew: He would not let us down.
Chapter 11
The Dash (Тирé)

The dash performs a wide variety of functions in Russian, only a few of which coincide with English. A proper understanding of the meaning and use of this mark in Russian cannot simply be inferred from a knowledge of English punctuation. The English dash is mainly a stylistic device used to express some unusual interruption in the flow of a sentence, while the Russian тирé is obligatory in many contexts. So read this chapter with special attention.

**Note:** Do not confuse the dash (тире) with the hyphen (дефис), a symbol used as a spelling device and only half as long as the dash in regular print. Below is an example of a sentence where both marks appear:

Современный компьютер — это настоящая чудо-машина.
The modern computer is a real miracle machine.

Uses of the hyphen in Russian spelling are discussed in Chapter 15.

11.1. The Dash Used in Place of a Linking Verb

In English, no punctuation mark separates a subject from its predicate (with the exception of the pair of commas that set off parenthetical words standing between subject and predicate). In Russian, however, where present tense forms of the verb быть, to be, are usually lacking, the dash often stands in place of a linking verb. Russian requires a dash where English uses the linking verb forms is, am, or are in the following four types of sentences:

11.1.1. The Subject and Predicate are Both Nouns

The dash is used in place of a linking verb in sentences where both subject and predicate (highlighted in the examples below) are expressed by nouns:

1. **Кни́га — исто́чник зна́ний.**
   A book is the source of knowledge.
2. **Гусеница — личинка бабочки.**
   A caterpillar is the larva of a butterfly.
3. **Нереша́тельность — уде́л слабых.**
   Indecisiveness is the domain of the weak.
4. Эльбрус, Казбек, Монблан — высочайшие гóry Еврóпы.  
*Elbrus, Kazbek, and Mont Blanc are the tallest mountains in Europe.*

**Note:** In speech, a pause often marks the place where the linking verb has been omitted. Generally, a dash written between subject and predicate corresponds to this brief pause. Also, in sentences where the dash is followed by an *это* or *вот* that emphasizes the predicate, the pause is obligatory. The words *это* or *вот* (which need not be translated into English) are particularly common when an abstract comparison is being made or when the predicate contains an indefinite pronoun such as *нечто*, *something*; or *все*, *everything*:

1. Жизнь — *это* гармония.  
Life is harmony.
2. Язык — *это* орудие мышления.  
Language is a tool of thinking.
3. Уважение к минувшему — *вот* чертa, отличаящая образованность от дикости.  
Respect for the past, now that is what distinguishes a civilized education from wildness.
4. История его жизни — *это* нечто из ряда воин выходящее.  
The story of his life is something out of the ordinary.
5. Жук — *это* любое насекомое с твёрдыми крыльями.  
A beetle is any insect that has hard wings.
6. Пунктуальность — *это* вежливая манера упрекать других в неточности (Достоевский).  
Being on time is a polite way of scolding others for being tardy.

**11.1.2. With Verbal Infinitives**

The dash is used *in place of* a linking verb in sentences where both subject and predicate are infinitives, or if the subject is a noun phrase in the nominative case and the predicate is an infinitive.

1. Наша цель — *добранься* до горы засветло.  
Our goal is to reach the mountain while it’s still light.
2. Первая задача при чтении — *понять* прочитанный материал.  
The first task when reading is to understand what you read.
3. Главное в жизни — *быть* честным.  
The main thing in life is to be honest.
4. Учить — ум *точить* (Пословица).  
To study is to sharpen the mind. (Proverb.)
5. Без дела жить — только небо *контить* (Пословица).  
To live idly is the same as smoking up the sky. (Proverb.)
6. Дру́га люби́ть — се́бя не щади́ть (Посло́вица).
   To love a friend means not to spare oneself. (Proverb.)

7. Жи́ть — посто́йно рожда́ться (Сент-Экзюпери́).
   To live is to be born over and over again. (Saint-Exupéry.)

8. Больши́е это удовольствие — жи́ть на земле́ (Го́рький).
   It is a great pleasure to live on the earth. (Gorky.)

11.1.3. When the Predicate Begins with одно́ из ‘one of’

A dash is used in place of a linking verb to introduce a predicate that begins
with the phrase одно́ из, “one of”:

1. Шама́нство — одно́ из ранних ста́дий в разви́тии религио́зных
   вёрований.
   Shamanism is one of the early stages in the development of religious beliefs.

2. Моско́ва — одно́ из крупнейших городо́в мира.
   Moscow is one of the largest cities in the world.

3. Сверхпроводи́мость — одно́ из интереснейших тем в современны́й
   фи́зики.
   Superconductivity is one of the most interesting topics in modern physics.

Note: If the predicate contains a form of the word одно́ with the meaning
“alone,” then no dash is used:

1. Она́ одно́.
   She is alone.

2. Мальчик одно́ во всём мире.
   The boy is alone in the whole world.

11.1.4. With Number Words (числительные)

A dash is used in place of a linking verb if either subject or predicate (or both)
is expressed by a number (числительное) or a noun phrase containing a
number.

1. Два́жды два — четы́ре.
   Two times two is four.

2. Пло́щадь комна́ты — двадцать квадра́тных метров.
   The area of the room is 20 cubic meters.

3. Больши́й Медве́дь — семь́ я́рких звёзд.
   The Great Bear is seven bright stars.

4. 36,6°C — норма́льная температу́ра челове́ческого тёла.
   36.6°C is the normal temperature of the human body.
11.2. Types of Sentences Where No Dash Separates Subject and Predicate Nominal

No dash appears between subject and predicate in certain specific instances that create exceptions to the four general rules given above:

a) In scientific literature the dash is normally not used when the predicate consists of a number phrase. Once again, you will probably not use this style of writing. In the examples below, the first sentence conforms to the style appropriate for a scientific journal; the second is in neutral style.

1. Глубина залегания нефти 1 500 м.
   (Neutral style: Глубина залегания нефти — 1 500 метров.)
   The depth of the oil deposit is 1,500 meters.

2. Грузоподъемность этого крана 5 тонн.
   (Neutral style: Грузоподъемность этого крана — пять тонн.)
   The lifting capacity of that crane is five tons.

3. Максимальная дальность действия данного прибора 15 км.
   (Neutral style: Дальность действия этого прибора — 15 километров.)
   The maximum range of the instrument in question is 15 kilometers.

b) Even when both subject and predicate are nouns, numbers, or verbal infinitives, no dash is needed if the sentence actually contains a linking verb. This includes a past or future tense form of the verb быть, to be; or есть meaning is, are; or whenever a linking verb other than быть is used, such as являться, to be, оказаться, to turn out, etc.

1. Его дед был знаменитым врачом.
   His grandfather was a famous doctor.

2. Мой друг будет хорошим футболистом.
   My friend will be a good soccer player.

3. Солнце есть источник всей энергии на Земле.
   The sun is the source of all energy on Earth.

4. Характер есть окончательно сформировавшаяся воля.
   A personality is a fully formed will.

5. Пословицы являются народной мудростью.
   Proverbs are folk wisdom.

6. Этот студент оказался отличным знатоком живописи.
   That student turned out to be a fine expert on painting.

c) No dash is used when the predicate contains an adjective with no noun. Only when predicate and subject both contain nouns is the dash needed.
Adjectival predicate  Noun phrase in predicate
1. Йоргъ спосбный. (cf. Йоргъ — спосбный врач.)
   Igor is talented.
2. Мой дом большй. (cf. Мой дом — твой дом.)
   My house is large.
3. Эта река длинная. (cf. Волга — самая длинная река в Европе.)
   That river is long.

However, the dash is recommended to introduce parallel predicates, including a series of adjectives. English uses no mark in such cases.

4. Глаза у не серёмы, чёрные, опущённые густыми ресницами.
   Her eyes are huge, dark, and enveloped in thick lashes.

d) Regardless of whether both subject and predicate are nouns, numbers, verbal infinitives, etc., a dash is not needed if the particle не, not, negates the predicate. Notice what happens if these statements are made positive.

1. Бедность не порок (compare: А по его мнению, бедность — порок).
   Poverty is not a vice. (But in his opinion poverty is a vice.)
2. Сердце не камень (compare: А её сердце — камень).
   The heart is not a rock. (But her heart is a rock.)
3. Мой дом не гостиница (compare: Мой дом — гостиница).
   My house is not a hotel. (My house is a hotel.)

4. Попытка не пытка.
   Trying doesn’t hurt (lit., An attempt is not torture).
   (Compare: А для меня любая попытка — сущая пытка.
   But for me any attempt is pure torture.)

e) No dash is used when the predicate expresses a direct comparison introduced by the words слвно, как, что, как будто, точно, or any other word equivalent to the English like or as.

1. Дорога слвно змей.
   The road is just like a snake.
2. Язык что нож.
   The tongue is like a knife.
3. Наш сад как проходной двор.
   Our garden is like a thoroughfare.
4. Льсберги слвно горь.
   The icebergs are like mountains.
5. У тебя брошка врёде как пчёлка (А. Чхов).
   Your brooch is like a little bee.
6. **Льдины бу́дто плоты.**
   *The chunks of ice are like rafts.*

   **However,** the dash may be used as a stylistic option to signal an expressive pause or other special division between subject and predicate. This literary device was particularly favored by the writer Maxim Gorky. Such a dash may even appear in the types of sentences mentioned above where modern punctuation does not normally require any mark between subject and predicate.

1. **Он — вор и обманщик!**
   *He is nothing but a thief and a liar!*
   (Neutral style: Он прекрасный инженер. *He’s a wonderful engineer.*)

2. **Это — плохое предзнаменование.**
   *This is a bad omen.*
   (Neutral style: Это плохое предзнаменование. *That’s a bad omen.*)

3. **Стена леса была как грудь, а костёр — словно кровавая рана в ней (Го́рький).**
   *The wall of trees was like a chest, the campfire like a bloody wound.*
   (Neutral style: Лес был как стенá. *The forest was like a wall.*)

   You may not have occasion to use this emotive linking dash in your own writing, but you will encounter it often enough when you read Russian literature.

f) If a parenthetical word, adverb, particle, conjunction, or non-coordinated modifier stands between a subject noun and a predicate expressed by a noun, then no dash is used.

1. **Ртуть тóже метáлл** (compare: Ртуть — метáлл).
   *Mercury is also a metal.*

2. **Май ужé конец весны** (compare: Май — конец весны).
   *May is already the end of spring.*

3. **Вóльга, по-моему, сáмая длéнная река в Еврóпе.**
   *The Volga, in my opinion, is the longest river in Europe.*
   (Compare: Вóльга — сáмая длéнная река в Еврóпе.)

4. **Вашингтон ужé давнó столица США.**
   *Washington has been the capital of the US for a long time.*
   (Compare: Вашингтон — столица США.)

5. **Рабóта для него великая радость** (compare: Рабóта — радость).
   *Work is a great joy for him.*

6. **Эверéст, кáжется, сáмая высóкая вершина в ми́ре.**
   *Everest, it seems, is the highest peak in the world.*
   (Compare: Эверéст — сáмая высóкая вершина в ми́ре.
   Эверéст — одна из сáмых высóких вершин ми́ра.)
g) If the subject is a personal pronoun, no dash is normally used.

1. Оней великие люди своeй эпохи.
   They are great people of their time.

2. Она воплощение невинности.
   She is the image of innocence.

3. Он наш новый преподаватель.
   He's our new teacher.

4. Мы с этим человеком больше друзей.
   That man and I are great friends.

5. Она с мужем известные гeологи.
   She and her husband are famous geologists.

   However, in compound sentences that express a contrast, dashes are used
   even when a pronoun plays the role of subject.

1. Она — врач, а он — физик.
   She is a doctor, while he is a physicist.

2. Мы — баскетболисты, а она — футболисты.
   We are basketball players and they are soccer players.

h) As a stylistic device the dash is omitted between subject and predicate in
   the following instances:

   i) In simple sentences on everyday topics, the dash is omitted between
      subject and predicate.

   1. Его мама врач.
      His mother is a doctor.

   2. Мой сын инженер.
      My son is an engineer.

   However, such sentences are occasionally ambiguous and the dash must be
   written to avoid misunderstanding.

1. Сестра мой — учительница (= Мой сестра учительница).
   My sister is a teacher.

   Сестра — моя учительница (= Сестра является моей учительницей).
   The sister is my teacher.

2. Брать мой — секретарь (= Мой брат секретарь).
   My brother is a secretary.

   Брать — мой секретарь (= Брать является моим секретарём).
   The brother is my secretary.
To avoid ambiguity when uttering such sentences aloud, a pause normally marks the place of transition between subject and predicate.

ii) In emphatic sentences of the type *What a ___!*, where predicate precedes subject, the dash is always omitted, even in sentences where both subject and predicate are nouns or where either is an infinitive.

1. Какой зануда этот Вася! (Compare: Этот Вася — большой зануда).
   What a bore that Vasya is!

2. Какое волшебное средство это лекарство!
   What magic this medicine is!
   (Compare: Это лекарство — волшебное средство.)

3. Какое счастье жить на земле!
   What happiness it is to live on this earth!
   (Compare: Жить на земле — большое счастье).

iii) In sentences where the comment (the new information) is prepended to the topic (the old information):

1. Большое счастье жить на земле!
   (What) a great happiness life on earth is!
   (Compare: Жить на земле — большое счастье.
   Life on earth is a great joy.)

2. Директор завода Григорий Андреевич.
   Factory manager is what Grigory Andreевич is.
   (Compare: Григорий Андреевич — директор завода.
   Grigory Andreевич’s job is factory manager.)

The second example above could contain dashes if the topic/comment structure were reversed:

3. Директор завода — Григорий Андреевич.
   The person who’s factory manager is Grigory Andreевич.
   It’s Grigory Andreевич who’s the factory manager.

When a comment predicate nominal is prepended, as in examples one and two, there is normally no pause between it and the following topic. Example three would normally have a pause between the topic and the following comment.

As you can see, use of the dash in place of a linking verb is a complex problem without real analog in English punctuation. Before proceeding further, test your knowledge of this important function of the Russian dash by completing the following exercise.
Exercise 11.1

Rewrite the sentences below, inserting a dash between subject and predicate whenever necessary.

1. Чтение вот лучшее учение (Послова).  
   Reading is the best way to learn. (Proverb.)

2. Дети это наше будущее.  
   Children are our future.

3. Площадь комнаты 30 квадратных метров.  
   The area of the room is 30 square meters.

4. Амазонка крупнейшая река мира.  
   The Amazon is the world's largest river.

5. Дуб светолюбивое дерево, а липа теневыносливое дерево.  
   The oak is a sun-loving tree, and the linden is shade-tolerant.

6. Перемена климата на небольшом расстоянии это и есть микроклимат.  
   A change in climate over a small distance is exactly what a microclimate is.

7. Космонавты первооткрыватели космоса.  
   Cosmonauts are discoverers of outer space.

8. Задумчивость это признак душевного переживания.  
   Pensiveness is a sign of emotional trauma.

9. Выдумывание особый талант.  
   The ability to think up new things is a special talent.

10. Хлеб в пути не тяжесть.  
    On a journey, bread is not a burden.

11. Самое лучшее и самое святое право королей помилование.  
    The best and most sacred right of kings is granting pardons.

12. Аналогия не доказательство.  
    An analogy isn’t proof.

13. Папа врач, а мама адвокат.  
    Dad is a doctor and Mom is a lawyer.

14. Январь только начало года.  
    January is only the beginning of the year.

15. Кибернетика одна из новых отраслей науки.  
    Cybernetics is one of the newest branches of science.

16. Трижды три девять.  
    Three times three is nine.

17. Спешить народ смешить (Послова).  
    To make haste is to make people laugh. (Proverb.)
18. Берёзка точно стройная, нарядная девушка.
A birch tree is like a slender, well-dressed young woman.

19. Труд для неё наслаждение.
Work for her is enjoyment.

20. Чертёж международный язык техники.
The mechanical drawing is the international language of technology.

11.3. The Dash in Elliptic Sentences (неполные предложения)

We have seen that a dash often appears in place of an omitted present-tense linking verb in Russian. The dash may also replace other predicate elements, provided the omission is accompanied in speech by a distinct pause. Here we have an instance where punctuation actually does correlate with both pronunciation and syntax. The examples below illustrate the parallel between an elliptic sentence, in which a dash replaces some omitted element, and the corresponding non-elliptic sentence. Remember that the dash in such sentences corresponds in speech to a distinct pause and a shift in intonation:

1. У дорожки стояли дома. За ними — огороды.
   Houses stood by the little road; behind them were vegetable gardens.
   (Compare the non-elliptic variant: За ними тянулись огороды.)

2. Андрей выбежал из комнаты. Я — за ним.
   Andrew ran out of the room, and I after him.
   (Compare: Я выбежал за ним.)

3. На лето все обычно уезжали ближе к морю, а он — в горы.
   For the summer, everyone usually would go somewhere closer to the sea, but he would go away to the mountains.
   (Compare: Он уезжал в горы.)

4. Некоторые считали этот портрет работой Ван-Дейка, иные — Рембрандта.
   Some considered that portrait to be a Van Dyke; others, a Rembrandt.
   (Compare: Иногда считали этот портрет работой Рембрандта.)

As can be seen from the translation of the last example, English may also omit part of the predicate, though the place of elision is marked by a comma rather than a dash. Elision is only possible in English if the omitted material is obvious from the context. In Russian, a dash may replace some predicate element even in contexts where the omitted information is not overtly expressed, as in these examples:

1. Прежде всего — чистота.
   Cleanliness first.
   (Compare: Прежде всего всегда должна соблюдаться чистота.
   Cleanliness should always be observed first.)
2. Тебе — премию! (Compare: Тебе сейчас дадим премию).
   A bonus to you! (We will give you a bonus now.)

3. Дети — в койку! (Compare: Дети должны непременно идти спать).
   The kids have gotta go to bed! (The kids must go to bed right now.)

4. Ты — домой! (Compare: Ты должна немедленно идти домой).
   You've gotta go home. (You must go home immediately.)

   Russian uses this sort of ellipsis as a stylistic device to accentuate the suddenness or inevitability of some event, or to underscore the universality of some truth or correlation. Here, Russian syntax, as well as punctuation, contrasts with that of English. Russian can afford to omit the content verbs in such sentences because the Russian word endings tend to indicate syntactic interrelationships with little ambiguity; English ellipsis is more restricted due to the relative lack of overt syntactic information in each individual word.

11.4. The Dash Used to Introduce a Generalizing Word (обобщающее слово) after a List of Items

A dash is used before a generalizing word that follows a list of items. Look at the following examples; the generalizing words are highlighted:

1. Надежду и пловца — всё море поглотило.
   Hope and swimmer—the sea swallowed it all.

2. В поле, в роще, в воздухе — всюду царствовало безмолвие.
   In the field, in the thicket, in the air—everywhere silence reigned.

3. И голос её, и манеры, и сама речь — всё было в этой женщине неестественно.
   Her voice, and her manners, and even her speech itself—everything about that woman was unnatural.

**Note 1.** If the generalizing word comes before the list of items, a colon is used to introduce it:

1. Море поглотило всё: надежду и пловца.
   The sea swallowed it all: hope and swimmer.

2. В этой женщине было неестественно всё: и голос её, и манеры, и сама речь.
   Everything about that woman was unnatural: her voice, and her manners, and even her speech itself.

3. Безмолвие царствовало всюду: в поле, в роще, в воздухе.
   Silence reigned everywhere: in the field, in the grove, in the air.

As you can see from the last two examples, the dash and colon are mirror opposites. The choice of punctuation depends entirely upon the word order. In this case the Russian system of punctuation is identical to English.
Note 2. Sometimes part of the generalizing phrase comes before the list, the rest after. In such a case, a colon is used to introduce the list, and a dash stands at the end before the rest of the generalizing phrase.

1. Все деревья в нашем саду: яблони, груши, сливы, вишни — посажены моим дедом.
   All the trees in our orchard—the apple, the pear, the plum(,) and the cherry trees—were planted by my grandfather.

2. Всё: перила, пророволочная решётка вдоль борта и плетёные кресла — были в росе.
   Everything—the rails, the wire screen along the deck, and the wicker armchairs—was covered with dew.

English would most likely use a pair of dashes to enclose such a list, but never a combination of colon plus dash.

Note 3. A list of items that stands in the middle of the generalizing phrase could also be set off by a pair of dashes. The difference is a stylistic one. Dashes are used if the list requires no special emphasis; the colon plus dash adds emphasis to the material in the list.

Вся растительность — деревья, цветы, кустарники — вдруг неожиданно изменила своё очертание с наступлением темноты.
   All the vegetation—the trees, the flowers, the bushes—changed shape with the coming of darkness.

11.5. A Dash Used in a Compound Sentence when an Adversative Conjunction is Omitted

In Russian, two sentences can be juxtaposed for contrastive effect without being connected by an adversative conjunction such as a, or но, but. In writing this type of asyndetic (бес союзное) compound sentence requires a dash.

1. Семь бед — один ответ (Пословица).
   Seven misfortunes, one answer. (= A man can die but once.)

   Remember that in speech, a special pause and shift of intonation normally marks the point of elision, and this special intonation corresponds to the dash in writing.

   The same statement could be made using a comma plus adversative conjunction: Семь бед, но один ответ, Seven misfortunes but only one answer. Asyndeton is especially characteristic of proverbs, aphorisms, and other witty or ironic statements. Here are several similar examples:
2. Смёльные побежда́ют — трусли́вые погиба́ют (Посло́вица).
   The bold triumph; cowards perish (Faint hearts never win fair ladies).
   (Compare: Смёльные побежда́ют, а трусли́вые погиба́ют.)

3. Смёльный крепости́ берёт — трус в безвёстности живёт (Посло́вица).
   The brave take fortresses, but the coward lives in obscurity. (Proverb.)
   (Compare: Смёльный крепости́ берёт, а трус в безвёстности живёт.)

4. Земля прожи́ть без нас сумае́т — мы оскуде́ем без неё (Се́ребряко́в).
   The Earth can get by without us, but we will grow needy without her.
   (Compare: Земля прожи́ть без нас сумае́т, но мы оскуде́ем без неё.)

5. Пуска́й я слаб — мой меч силён (Жуко́вский).
   Maybe I am weak but my sword is strong.
   (Compare: Пуска́й я слаб, но мой меч силён.)

6. Я говори́л пра́вду — мне не ве́рили (Ле́рмонтов).
   I spoke the truth and they didn’t believe me.
   (Compare: Я говори́л пра́вду, а мне не ве́рили.)

11.6. The Dash Used instead of a Comma or Comma plus Coordinating Conjunction in a Compound Sentence

In the example below, a dash is used to join two simple sentences into an asyndetic compound sentence (бессо́йное сложносочи́нённое предложе́ние):

1. Мяч влетел в воро́та — стадио́н зашуме́л.
   The ball flew through the goal posts and the stadium erupted.

   Why do we use a dash here? To emphasize that the second part of the sentence contains unexpected information.

   We have seen that simple sentences can be strung together into a compound sentence by using a comma or comma plus coordinating conjunction. But using a comma instead of a dash would fail to underscore the unexpectedness of the event. The comma is appropriate for neutral statements:

2. a. Мяч влетел в воро́та, стадио́н зашуме́л.
    b. Мяч влетел в воро́та, и стадио́н зашуме́л.
   The ball flew through the goal posts(,) and the stadium erupted.

   Let’s analyze one more example of the use of a dash in place of a comma plus coordinating conjunction in a compound sentence:

3. Дверь распахну́лась — в ко́мнату вбежа́ли дёти.
   The door burst open and children ran into the room.

   The dash here also adds special emphasis to the contrast between two events. Compare the same sentence written in neutral style:
4. a. Дверь распахнулась, в комнату вбежали дети.
   b. Дверь распахнулась, и в комнату вбежали дети.
   The door burst open(,) and children ran into the room.

Once again, the dash best conveys an intimate, yet unexpected, connection between two events in time or perception.

Notice that the English dash is not used in compound sentences. Instead, a coordinating conjunction without a comma is typically employed. The two phrases could also be separated by a semicolon or punctuated as separate sentences:

5. Мяч влетел в ворота — стадион зашумел.
   a. The ball flew through the goal and the stadium erupted.
   b. The ball flew through the goal; the stadium erupted.
   c. The ball flew through the goal. The stadium erupted.

The first translation best corresponds in style to the Russian dash.

11.7. The Dash Used instead of Comma plus Subordinating Conjunction

A dash may also replace a comma plus subordinating conjunction in a complex sentence (сложноподчинённое предложение). Once again, the variant with the dash conveys the information with a special brevity. The first clause of such sentences constitutes the background information, or topic (тема); the second clause, which follows the dash, represents the main idea of the sentence, or comment (рема). Such sentences can be grouped according to the type of subordinating conjunction that the dash replaces:

11.7.1. Condition

A dash may be used to separate two clauses when the first describes some condition relevant to the event described in the second.

Ничего не рисковать — ничего не иметь.
Don't take risks and you won't have anything in return.
(Compare: Если ничего не рисковать, то ничего не будет иметь.
If you don't take risks(,) you achieve nothing.)

The Russian sentence given in parentheses contains a dependent clause of condition. The sentence with the dash is also a complex sentence, but here the formal distinction between main and subordinate clause has been removed; the dash that connects the clauses replaces the subordinating conjunction если, if.

In the above example, as well as in those given below, the variants with the dash are more succinct and direct than those without it:

1. Нравится рисовать — рисуй на здоровье, никто не запрещает.
   If you like to draw(,) go ahead and draw. No one forbids it.
   (Compare: Если нравится рисовать, рисуй на здоровьё...
2. Растение не поливать — оно скоро засохнет.
Don’t water a plant and it will soon wilt.
(Compare: Если растение не поливать, оно скоро засохнет.)

3. Хочешь — пойдем в лес, не хочешь — останемся дома.
If you want to go to the woods, we’ll go; if not, then we’ll stay home.
(Compare: Если хочешь, пойдем в лес, если не хочешь…)

4. Любишь гостить — люби и к себе звать.
If you enjoy being a guest then enjoy being a host.
(Compare: Если любишь гостить, люби и к себе звать.)

5. В молодости не научись работать — в старости останешься с пустыми руками.
Don’t learn to work when you’re young and you’ll be left empty-handed in old age.
(Compare: Если в молодости не научись работать, в старости…)

11.7.2. Time

A dash may be used to separate two clauses when the first indicates the time of the event and the second states that event:

1. Настает утро — двинемся в путь.
Come morning we’ll push on.

This sentence is synonymous to the one below:

2. Когда настает утро, двинемся в путь.
When morning comes, we’ll push on.

Here we have a complex sentence in which Когда настает утро is a subordinate clause of time and Двинемся в путь is the main clause. The conjunction когда, when, connects the subordinate clause to the main clause.

Let’s examine a few more complex sentences where a dash has replaced the subordinating conjunction когда plus comma:

1. Упадет луч солнца на траву — вспыхнет трава изумрудом и жемчугом.
A ray of sun falls on the grass and it glows like emerald and pearl.
(Compare: Когда упадет луч солнца на траву, вспыхнет трава изумрудом и жемчугом.)

2. Встретимся — расскажу тебе обо всем подробно.
We’ll meet and I’ll tell you all about everything in detail.
(Compare: Когда встретимся, расскажу тебе обо всем подробно.)

3. Взошло солнце — птичий гомон в лесу усилился.
The sun rose and the chatter of the birds got louder.
(Compare: Когда взошло солнце, птичий гомон в лесу усилился.)
11.7.3. Result

A dash may also separate two clauses of a complex sentence when the second describes some result of the first. The first example below contains a comma plus the subordinating conjunction поэтому therefore. In the second, a dash replaces the comma plus conjunction.

1. Применили новую технику, поэтому повысилась производительность труда.
   A new technology was applied; therefore, labor productivity increased.

2. Применили новую технику — повысилась производительность труда.
   A new technology was applied and labor productivity increased.

The dash here indicates logical subordination of the second sentence fragment to the first. Here are some more examples:

1. Помогли друзья — дело двинулось с места.
   My friends helped and things got moving.
   (Compare: Друзья помогли, поэтому дело двинулось с места.)

2. Посмотрел на картину — вспомнил имя художника.
   I took a look at the picture and remembered the artist’s name.
   (Compare: Посмотрел на картину, поэтому вспомнил…)

3. Сыр выпал — с ним был плутовка такова (Крылов).
   The cheese dropped out and the rogue made off with it in a flash.
   (Compare: Сыр выпал, и поэтому плутовка с ним убежала.)

Exercise 11.2

Insert a dash between the dependent and main clauses in each of the following sentences.

1. Хочешь пойдём в лес, не хочешь остаёмся дома.
   If you want(,) we’ll go to the woods; if you don’t(,) we’ll stay home.

2. Горы оседают недра раздаются, реки высыхают руслы остаются (Подольков).
   When mountains wear away(,) the depths of the earth are exposed; when rivers dry up(,) their channels remain.

3. Выйдем снег будем кататься на лыжах.
   a. If it snows(,) we’ll go skiing.
   b. Come snow, we’ll go skiing.

4. Много снега много хлеба.
   When there’s lots of snow(,) there’s lots of grain.

5. Вьстрел раздался дым наполнил комнату (Лермонтов).
   A shot rang out and smoke filled the room.
6. Всё так чётко, ладно душа радуется (Симонов).
   Everything is so accurate and so harmonious that the soul rejoices.

7. Займёшься интересным и важным делом хандру как рукой снимет.
   Take up some interesting and important task and your depression vanishes in a flash.

8. Убеждений у него не было и было честолюбие.
   He had no convictions, only ambition.

9. Продел лёто поёду на юг.
   a. When summer comes(,) we’ll go south.
   b. Come summer(,) we’ll go south.

10. Геология и климат, фауна и флора всё оставалось загадкой.
    Geology and climate, fauna and flora—everything was still a mystery.

11. Хочешь увидеть подальше взбираясь на гору, хочешь побольше узнать спрашивай старших.
    If you want to see farther(,) climb a hill; if you want to know more(,) ask your elders.

12. Лес рубят щепки летят (Пословица).
    Chop trees and splinters fly. (Proverb.)
    (Compare: You can’t make an omelette without breaking eggs.)

13. Проснулся вокруг меня не знакомые лица.
    When I awoke, there were unfamiliar faces around me.

14. Выйдет солнце из-за облака чувствуешь на лицо горячую ласку света (Бунин).
    When the sun comes out from behind a cloud(,) you feel the hot caress of light on your face.

15. И бледное голубое небо, и мягкий плеек моря, и крик чаек над водой всё это напоминало мне моей родные мест.
    The pale blue sky, the soft splash of the sea(,) and the mewing of the gulls across the water—it all reminded me of my native haunts.

16. Всё вокруг меня деревья, кусты, цветы приобрело какое-то причудливое очертание.
    Everything around me—the trees, bushes, and flowers—took on a sort of odd contour.

17. Раз солгал навек глупым стал (Пословица).
    If you lie once you’re a liar forever.
    (Lie once and you’re a liar forever.)

18. Луна светило ярко можно было рассмотреть на земле каждую соломинку.
    The moon shone brightly(,) so every straw was visible on the ground.
11.7.4. Comparison of Dashes and Colons Used to Convey Cause and Effect

To further clarify how dashes are used in complex sentences of cause and effect, compare the use of dash vs. colon in certain types of complex sentences.

Take a look at the sentence below:

1. Света́ет — на́до встава́ть.
   *It's getting light(,) so it's time to get up.*

   In this sentence, a dash replaces a subordinate conjunction plus comma. Now take a look at the same sentence rewritten with the conjunction plus comma instead of the dash:

2. Поско́льку света́ет, на́до встава́ть.
   *Since it's getting light, it's time to get up.*

   Here, the subordinate clause (given in italics) stands first and the main clause follows. Because of this order of clauses, the dash was used in the previous sentence.

   If the order of clauses is reversed, with the resultant event described before the causal agent, then a colon is used:

3. На́до встава́ть: света́ет.
   *It's time to get up because it's getting light.*

   This sentence could be rewritten using a subordinating conjunction:

4. На́до встава́ть, пото́му что света́ет.
   *It's time to get up because it's getting light.*

   Below are two more pairs of sentences illustrating the same correlation between punctuation and clause order:

1. a. Соба́ка лежа́ла у са́мой дvéри — Во́ва бо́йлся двéнуться да́льше.
   *A dog lay right beside the door, so Vova was afraid to go through.*

   b. Во́ва бо́йлся двéнуться да́льше: соба́ка лежа́ла у са́мой дvéри.
   *The boy was afraid to go through because a dog lay beside the door.*

2. a. О́коло о́кон послéщались ша́гí — мы́ стáли прислéшивать́сь.
   *Footsteps sounded by the windows(,) so we began listening carefully.*

   b. Мы́ стáли прислéшивать́сь: о́коло о́кон послéщались ша́гí.
   *We began listening carefully because there were footsteps by the windows.*

   As can be seen from the translations of the above sentences, English uses a subordinating conjunction rather than a dash or colon between the two clauses of a complex sentence.
Exercise 11.3

Fill in the blank with a colon or a dash depending on whether the subordinate clause comes first or last in the sentence.

1. a. Ёрко блеснула молния — ребёнок в страха охватил мать обеими руками.
   The lightning flashed brightly, so the terrified child hugged its mother with both arms.

   b. Ребёнок в страхе охватил мать обеими руками — ёрко блеснула молния.
   The terrified child hugged its mother with both arms because lightning flashed brightly.

2. a. Река вышла из берегов — прервалось сообщение с городом.
   The river flooded, so contact with the town was cut off.

   b. Прервалось сообщение с городом — река вышла из берегов.
   Contact with the town was cut off because the river flooded.

3. a. Ноги начали увязать в грязи — я решил свернуть с дороги.
   My feet began sinking in the mud, so I decided to turn off the road.

   b. Я решил свернуть с дороги — ноги начали увязать в грязи.
   I decided to turn off the road because my feet began sinking in the mud.

4. a. Впереди были заросли колючего кустарника — пройти было невозможно.
   Thickets of thorny bush lay ahead, so it was impossible to pass.

   b. Пройти было невозможно — впереди были заросли колючего кустарника.
   It was impossible to pass because thickets of thorny bush lay ahead.

5. a. Я стал прислушиваться — раздался какой-то странный звук.
   I began to listen carefully because there was a strange noise.

   b. Раздался какой-то странный звук — я стал прислушиваться.
   There was a strange sound, so I began to listen carefully.

6. a. Заглядывая ёркие фонари — стало светло как днём.
   Bright streetlights came on and it became as light as day.

   b. Стало светло как днём — заглядывая ёркие фонари.
   It became as light as day because bright streetlights came on.

7. a. Идти было трудно — шёл мокрый снег.
   It was difficult to walk because wet snow was falling.

   b. Шёл мокрый снег — идти было трудно.
   Wet snow was falling and so it was difficult to walk.
8. a. Зажгли свечи — стало темнеть.
   They lit candles because it began to get dark.

   b. Стало темнеть — зажгли свечи.
   It began to get dark, so they lit candles.

9. a. Пришли заранее — не терпелось посмотреть на это чудо.
   They came early because they couldn’t wait to witness that marvel.

   b. Не терпелось посмотреть на это чудо — пришли заранее.
   They couldn’t wait to witness that marvel and so they came early.

10. a. Кто-то зажег спичку — мелькнул огонек.
    Someone lit a match and a little light flickered on.

    b. Мелькнул огонек — кто-то зажег спичку.
    A little light flickered on because someone lit a match.

11.8. The Dash Separating Two Words Denoting Space, Time, or Quantity

A dash may be used between two words that indicate some measure of space, time, or quantity. This mark of punctuation, known as the connective dash (соединительное тире), is the functional equivalent of a pair of prepositions such as от ... до, from ... to. In English, a slash or hyphen, or even some connecting word, would normally serve this function.

1. На линии Москва—Одесса ходит скоростной поезд.
   An express train runs on the Moscow/Odessa line.

2. Приходи часов в семь — восемь.
   Come somewhere between seven and eight.

3. Нам будет достаточно штук пятнадцать — двадцать.
   We can make do with 15 to 20 of them.

4. На собрании было человечек двести — двести пятьдесят.
   At the meeting there were 200 to 250 people.

Words connected by this type of dash are normally spoken without any intervening pause.

**Note 1:** The connective dash that stands between numerals tends not to have a space before or after it:

На собрании было 200—250 человечек.
(Compare: двести — двести пятьдесят человечек.)
Note 2: A hyphen can be used instead of a dash if the amount is expressed by words, if the numbers are close together, and if the writer wants to emphasize uncertainty regarding the exact figure:

Там было пять-шесть человек.
There were five or six people there (I'm not sure which: five or six).

This "hyphen of uncertainty" could be replaced by the adversative conjunction или, or, as in related uses of the dash, it does not correspond to a pause when read aloud. If the words are replaced by numerals, then a dash is used instead of the hyphen:

Там было 5—6 человек.
There were five or six people there.

Note 3: A connective dash is also used in the formation of certain compound modifiers and appositives, where it likewise does not correspond to a pause in speech. Here the dash comes close to being used as a spelling device. The connective dash is used in the following types of compounds:

a) When two or more personal names are juxtaposed to form the appellation of some company, phenomenon, disease, etc., such as: синдром Кре́йцфельда—Йа́кобы, Kreuzfeld-Jakob syndrome (a disease); идеи Вашингтона—Дже́фферсона, the ideas of Washington and Jefferson.

b) When two or more personal names are joined together to form the official name of some event, they are connected by a dash. In such cases, the nouns do not stand in the genitive, but function as a compound appositive elaborating on the meaning of the preceding noun: история Онегина—Ле́нскаго, the Onegin-Lensky affair; матч Кárпов—Каспаро́ва, the Karpov vs. Kasparov (chess) match. Note that English uses a hyphen, connecting word, or slash for this purpose.

c) The dash likewise appears in certain compound modifiers made from common nouns, such as: отношения учитель—ученик, student-teacher relations; проблема производство—человек—природа, the conflict between people, industry and environment; Such compounds are non-coordinated appositives that follow the noun they modify (just like газета «Пра́вда»). English uses a hyphen or a conjunction in such compounds, which, unlike Russian, are preposited to the modified noun.

We will return to the use of punctuation symbols as spelling devices in Chapter 15.
11.9. The Dash Used to Introduce Words that Elaborate on the Meaning of the Preceding Word

If a word is followed by information that elaborates on its meaning, a dash is used to introduce this material. This explanatory dash (тёрэ поясня́тельное) means something like “that is,” or “more precisely”:

1. У новгородцев были свой враги — варяги.  
   The Novgorodians had their own enemies, the Varangians.

2. Писа́ть Георгий Мárков на́чал рано — трина́дцати лет (Агáтов).  
   Georgy Markov began to write early, at the age of thirteen.

3. Бы́ла у меня така́я привы́чка — усме́хаться (Ткачёнко).  
   I had the habit of snickering.  
   (Literally, I had such a habit, to snicker.)

   As can be seen from the above translations, such explanatory phrases are usually set off by a comma in English. But English also prefers the dash if the phrase is internally complex, as in the first example below; or charged with some high emotion, as in the second:

1. Люблю я пёстрое ве́лицье кавка́зского пейза́жа — высо́кие го́ры, крутые обр́ывы, дрему́чие леса́, бу́рные ре́ки, го́рные водопа́ды.  
   I love the multicolored majesty of the Caucasian landscape—high mountains, steep precipices, deep forests, tumultuous rivers and alpine waterfalls.

2. Жить стáло тяже́лее — неу́рожа́й, набе́ги кочевни́ков, война́.  
   Life became more difficult—a bad harvest, nomad raids, war.

   In instances where the sentence continues after the explanatory material has ended, a pair of dashes is normally used in Russian to set it off from the rest of the sentence:

1. Ве́лицие и я́ркость кра́сок кавка́зского пейза́жа — высо́кие го́ры, крутые обр́ывы, дрему́чие леса́, бу́рные ре́ки и го́рные водопа́ды — не могли не возде́йствовать на формиро́вания личности поэ́та (Агáтов).  
   The majesty and vibrancy of the Caucasian landscape—high mountains, steep precipices, deep forests, tumultuous rivers and alpine waterfalls—could not but effect the formation of the poet’s personality.

2. Два ра́за в день — на рассве́те и на зака́те — я соверша́л удивительные про́гулки, запо́мнившие мне на всё жизнь (Рыле́нков).  
   Twice a day, at sunrise and at sunset, I went on amazing walks, which stayed in my memory all my life.

   If a short explanatory phrase interrupts the sentence, Russian may set it off with a pair of commas rather than the usual dashes, though dashes are preferred in most cases. By contrast, English prefers the comma except where the explanatory phrase is internally complex, emotionally charged, or is felt to dis-
rupt the flow of the sentence in some significant way. For instance, the second sentence above could have also been rendered in English as: *Twice a day—at sunrise and at sunset—I went on amazing walks, which stayed in my memory all my life,* but only if the writer wished to place some special emphasis on the phrase *at sunrise and at sunset.*

In the next section, we will see that the dashes are obligatory in Russian and English to set off any inserted element that interrupts the flow of the sentence by virtue of its strong emotive marking.

11.10. Dashes Used to Set off an Inserted Sentence Element Pronounced with Special Emotive Intonation

An author can use a pair of dashes to signal that an inserted sentence element should be spoken with more expressive intonation:

1. Как вдруг — о чудо, о позор! — заговорил оракул вздор.
   *When suddenly—o wonder, o shame!—the oracle spoke nonsense.*

2. Как только можно будет, отпра́влуюсь — только не в Европу, избыв Боже! — поеду в Америку, в Аравию, в Индию (Л.).
   *As soon it becomes possible(,) I'll set out—only not to Europe, God forbid!—I’ll go to America, to Arabia, to India.*

3. Как решительно — а как же инча?! — мы отвергаем всёкое посяга́тельство на на́шу свободу!
   *How decisively—how else?!—we reject any encroachment on our freedom!*

Notice that the enclosed material may end in an exclamation point or a question mark, punctuation that is otherwise confined to the end of sentences. This usage of the paired dash to mark an abrupt interruption in the flow of ideas in a sentence is becoming increasingly frequent in English, as well.

11.11. Heterogenous Combinations of Comma and Dash

In Russian, several contexts require combinations of comma and dash, with each mark retaining its own separate and unrelated syntactic function. In each of these instances, the dash invariably follows the comma.

a) We have seen in Chapter 7 that dependent clauses in Russian are always set off by commas. A comma plus dash, therefore, occurs when the dash is needed to separate subject and predicate and the subject phrase ends with a dependent clause.

1. Знания, которые вы освоили,— это великая сила.
   *The knowledge you have gained is a great power.*

2. Распространённое мнение о том, что существуют неинтересные профессии,— предрассудок, рождённый на́шим невежеством.
   *The widespread opinion that there exist uninteresting professions is a prejudice born of ignorance.*
3. Единоставное, что раздражало его,— это скрипучие полови́цы.
The only thing that annoyed him was the creaking floor boards.

If the dependent clauses were removed from the above sentences, the comma would disappear along with them, but the dash would remain to mark the omitted linking verb between subject and predicate:

1. Ваши новые знания — это великая сила.
Your new knowledge is a great power.

2. Ваше мнение — это лишь предрассудок, рожденный вашим невежеством.
Your opinion is merely a prejudice born of your ignorance.

3. Единственное раздражение, это — скрипучие полови́цы.
The only annoyance is the creaking floor boards.

Such combinations of comma plus dash, not found in modern English punctuation, have several additional uses in Russian.

b) A comma plus dash is used in Russian when a list of items preceding a generalizing word (обообще́ющее слóво) ends with a dependent clause or participial construction.

1. Перегру́зки органи́зма, состояние невесомости, излечение, прони́зываю́щее космическое пространство,— таковы́ воздейст́вия, кото́рым подвер́гается органи́зм во врёмя космических полётов.
Bodily stresses, weightlessness(,) and radiation from space are the factors the body is subjected to during space flights.

2. И эти люди, и тени вокруг костра, и тёмные тóки, и далёкая молния, каждую минуту сверка́вшая вдали,— всё теперь представля́лось ему нелю́дьмым и страши́ным.
These people, the shadows around the fire, the dark bales, the distant lightning that flashed on the horizon every minute—it all seemed uncivilized and terrifying to him now.

Compare the following sentence, from which the dependent clause is removed. Once again, the dash remains in its proper place, while the comma is deleted along with the dependent clause:

3. И эти люди, и тени вокруг костра, и тёмные тóки, и далёкая молния— всё теперь представля́лось ему нелю́дьмым и страши́ным.
These people, the shadows around the fire, the dark bales, the distant lightning—it all seemed uncivilized and terrifying to him now.

c) A comma plus dash is likewise used whenever an explanatory phrase follows a dependent clause set off by commas.
Ещё неизвестно, кто одолеет,— мы или они.
It's still unclear who will win, they or we.

Exercise 11.4

Rewrite the sentences below, filling in each blank with a dash or a comma plus dash.

1. Общий интерес, создавший великолепное княжество Киевское ___ внешняя торгово ___ направлен и его дальнейшее развитие.
The mutual interest that created the great Kievan state, foreign trade, directed its future development as well.

2. И ещё одно примечательное свойство, присущее характеру героини ___ женственность. (Ага́тов)
And there is one more notable quality characteristic of the heroine, femininity.

3. Второе условие, необходимое для оживления организма ___ искусственное дыхание.
The second factor needed to revive a person is artificial respiration.

4. Ей на вид было лет пятьдесят ___ пятьдесят пять.
She appeared to be 50 or 55 years of age.

5. Кроме «сёрых хлебов» ___ ржи и овся ___ стали сеять много пшеницы, конопли и картофеля.
In addition to the “brown grains,” rye and oats, they began planting lots of wheat, hemp(,) and potatoes.

6. Пройдя километров пять ___ шесть, мы остановились на отдых.
After traveling five to six kilometers we stopped for rest.

7. На севере Сахалина ___ тайга, на юге, омывааемом тёплыми морскими течениями ___ пробковое дерево, бамбук, тис.
There is taiga in northern Sakhalin, but in the south, which is washed by warm sea currents, grow cork trees, bamboo(,) and yew.

8. Третья категория воздействия, которым подвергается организм в космосе ___ это влияние радиации.
A third type of effect the body is subjected to in space is the influence of radiation.

9. Определение наказания, которое должно быть основано на законе ___ дело судей-законоведов (Ключёвский).
Determining punishment, a task which should be grounded in law, is the work of experienced judges.
10. На одной из таких лекций перед студентами — будущими учителями — я рассказывал о творческом пути писателя Константина Паустовского.
On one of those lectures for students studying to be teachers, I talked about the creative development of the writer Konstantin Paustovsky.

11. Нас зачислили шофёрами в карьер, отвели жилплощадь — комнатку на две койки с одной тумбочкой.
They hired us as quarry drivers and gave us living quarters consisting of a room with two cots and a single nightstand.

12. Потом ночами стали гореть дома — по нескольку, в разных концах города (Ткаченко).
Then houses began to catch fire in the night, several at a time in different parts of town.

13. В настоящее время идеи Маркса — Энгельса — Ленина подвергаются большой критике.
Today, the ideas of Marx, Engels, and Lenin are much criticized.

14. Я на минуту завернул к родник — напиться.
I turned off for a minute to go to a spring, so I could get a drink.

15. Расстояние от села одна — три версты (Соловьин).
The distance from the village is one to three versts.

16. В любое время суток идут машины по дороге Киев — Харьков.
At any time of day, cars travel the Kiev-Kharkov road.

17. А теперь держи вот это — килограмм шашлыка.
And now hold this, a kilogram of shish kebab meat.

18. Дети, как известно, интересуются двумя временами — настоящим и будущим.
Kids generally are interested in two times, the present and the future.

19. Берёза — красивое, кудрявое, беловатое дерео — стало лирическим символом России.
The birch — a beautiful, curly-branched tree with a white trunk — has become the lyric symbol of Russia.

20. Берёза в среднем живёт сто — сто пятьдесят лет.
The average birch tree lives a hundred to a hundred and fifty years.

Note: The Russian dash also plays a role in punctuating direct speech, which will be discussed in Chapter 14.
Chapter 12
Parentheses and Brackets (скобки)

The Russian word скобки corresponds to the English “parentheses” as well as “brackets”. As a mark of punctuation, the English parentheses ( ) correspond to the Russian круглые скобки, or round brackets, while English “brackets” correspond to two types of Russian punctuation: [ ], квадратные скобки, square brackets; or < >, угловые скобки, angle brackets. Only the parentheses function as a true mark of punctuation in Russian.

12.1. Parentheses with Incidental Words and Phrases

We have seen that commas are used to set off detached elements from the rest of the sentence. The element enclosed in a pair of commas is not crucial to the meaning of the sentence, but merely elaborates on some other sentence element. If the detached element is particularly abrupt or contains its own internal punctuation, a pair of dashes rather than commas may be used to set it off from the rest of the sentence.

Occasionally, however, the author wishes to insert some comment that is neither shocking, on the one hand, nor directly related to the topic of the sentence, on the other. In this case, the inserted element (вставная конструкция) should be enclosed by parentheses (круглые скобки). Compare the following three sentences:

1. Кремль, суро́вый и держа́вный, возвыша́лся пе́ред на́ми.
   The Kremlin, stern and imposing, towered before us.

2. Кремль — Боже, не ве́рится, что мы в Москве! — возвыша́лся пе́ред на́ми.
   The Kremlin—God, I don’t believe we’re in Moscow—towered before us!

3. Кремль (что означа́ет «крéпость») возвыша́лся пе́ред на́ми.
   The Kremlin (which means “fortress”) towered before us.

Words, phrases and even sentences that appear in a text as incidental remarks are usually enclosed in parentheses. Here are some examples from the classics of Russian literature:

1. Я вас люблю́ (к чему́ лука́вить?), Но я друго́му отдана́; И бу́ду век емú вернá.
   It’s you I love (why dissemble?), But I belong to another, I’ll be ever faithful to him.

   (А. С. Пу́шкин)
2. Печально (как говориться, машинально)  
Татьяна молча оперлась, 
Головкой тонкою склонилась.  
(А. С. Пушкин) 

Sadly (as it’s usually put) 
Tatyana silently leaned over, 
Her languid head askance. 

3. В жаркое летнее утро (это было на исходе июля) разбудили нас с сестрицей раннее обыкновенного  
(С. Аксаков). 

That hot summer morning (it was at the end of July) my sister and I were awakened earlier than usual. 

The use of parentheses to enclose incidental information is the same in English and Russian. 

12.2. Parentheses Which Enclose Stage Directions 

The following rules apply when punctuating a text containing stage directions (ремарки). The same rules pertain to written descriptions of actions included in stenography transcripts (стенограммы) of conversations. 

a) Stage directions normally begin with a capital letter and are enclosed in parentheses. A final period is written outside of the closing parenthesis. The period at the end of the sentence directly preceding the parenthetical material is deleted (unlike English), but a question mark, exclamation point, or points of omission remains. 

1. Строительство дороги закончено успешно (Аплодисменты). 
The construction of the road was successfully completed. (Applause.) 

2. Поздравляем с великой наградой! (Аплодисменты). 
Congratulations on your great prize! (Applause.) 

b) Stage directions placed directly after the name of a character in a play do not begin with a capital letter. They are, however, also enclosed in parentheses, and a period is written after the closing parenthesis. Such stage directions may also be written in some special script, such as italics (курсив). The name of the character who is speaking may also be set off in some special way, either by boldface, or darkened, type (жирный шрифт) or by small capitals. In English, the same conventions are used, except that the name of the character can be followed by a colon or a period. 

1. Андрей (сконфуженно). Я говорю тихо. 
   a. ANDREY (confused). I speak softly. 
   b. ANDREY (confused): I speak softly. 

2. Царь (смутно поднявшись). О, где она? Где она? 
   a. TSAR (rising hastily). Oh, where is she? Where is she? 
   b. TSAR (rising hastily): Oh, where is she? Where is she?
c) A stage direction that interrupts dialog is enclosed in parentheses; however, it is not capitalized, and no end mark of punctuation is used. This convention is also observed in English.

1. БОБЧИНСКИЙ. Недурной наружности, и в лице здакое рассуждение… и здесь (вертит рукой около лба) много, много всего (Гоголь).
   BOBCHINSKY. Not bad looking, and such a contemplative face… and here (twirling a hand near his forehead) there’s so much of everything.

d) A stage direction coming between two sentences of dialog is punctuated as a separate sentence and is enclosed in parentheses together with its end mark of punctuation (a convention also observed in English).

1. ВАСАНЯТКА (в сторону). Как же мне теперь быть? Ага! (Вслуш.) Прости моему бесценному другу…
   VASANATKA (aside). What am I to do now? Aha! (Aloud.) Forgive my priceless friend…

2. САЛЬЕРИ. До свидания. (Один.) Ты заснешь надолго, Моцарт! (Пушкин).
   SALYERI. Goodbye. (Alone.) Your slumber will be long, Mozart!

12.3. Marks Used Together with a Closing Parenthesis

We have already examined the rules of punctuation which apply to stage directions. Now let us examine more general rules that apply whenever a closing parenthesis stands adjacent to another mark of punctuation. Remember, these rules may differ from those that apply to stage directions.

a) A period follows a closing parenthesis.

1. Рано утром они прибыли в Ленинград (Санкт-Петербург).
   Early in the morning, they arrived in Leningrad (Saint Petersburg).

   The period is written outside the closing parenthesis in Russian when an entire sentence is parenthetical. The preceding sentence can end in any final mark of punctuation. In English, however, a final period is enclosed whenever an entire sentence stands within parentheses:

2. Откуда уж им это знать? (Такое понял под силу только умникам).
   How could they know it? (Such a thing only the wise can understand.)

3. «Не стыдно ли стен тебе, не только что людей?» (А Ва́ська всё-таки курчо́нка уби́рает).
   You should be ashamed in front of these walls, let alone in front of people. (But Vaska eats the chicken anyway.)

4. Жаль, очень жаль… (А глаза смеялись).
   What a pity, what a pity… (But her eyes were laughing.)
5. Како́е небо́ я́сное! (Не пове́рить, что час на́зад онó бы́ло чёрным и сверка́ли молни́).  
What a clear sky! (It’s hard to believe that an hour ago it was black and lightning flashed.)

6. Он со́ветовал мне не хо́дить туда́ одним. (Но я всё равно́ пойду́ туда́ один).  
He advised me not to go there alone. (But I’ll go there alone anyway.)

b) A question mark, exclamation point, or points of omission precedes the closing parenthesis if the entire sentence or phrase to which it belongs is parenthetical.

1. Он поло́жи́л книгу на испи́санный листо́к (ну и хитёр же он!) и бесшумно вы́шел из ко́мнаты.  
He put the book on a sheet of paper covered with writing (the sly devil!) and quietly left the room.

2. Ли́цо его́ стáло жёстким (не шутит…) и потеря́ло всю сво́ю привле́кательность.  
His face grew stern (he wasn’t joking…) and lost all its attractiveness.

3. Ли́за улыбну́лась (неуже́ли?) и смущёно отверну́лась.  
Liza smiled (really?) and turned away in embarrassment.

This rule is the same in Russian as in English.

c) If only the last word or phrase of a sentence is parenthetical, a question mark, exclamation point, or points of omission that relates to the whole sentence stands outside the closing parenthesis.

1. Онí бы́ли в Ленингра́де (Санкт-Петербу́рг)?  
Were they in Leningrad (Saint Petersburg)?

2. Нако́нéц приéхал Алексе́й (сы́н диéректора)!  
Aleskei (the director’s son) has finally arrived!

3. Да, настрадáлись мы с éтим Алексéе́м (сы́ном диéректора)…  
Yes, we’ve suffered a lot because of that Aleksei (the director’s son)…

This rule is the same in English. (Instances that require a combination of closing parenthesis plus exclamation point or points of omission are not common.)

d) Internal marks of punctuation such as the comma, semicolon, and colon always follow a closing parenthesis.

The comma, colon, or semicolon in the examples below relate to the text outside the parenthetical material and would still be needed even if the parenthetical material were deleted from the sentence:
31. Я вас люблю (к чему лукавить?), но я другому отдан; я буду век ему верна (Пушкин).
   *It's you I love (why dissemble?), but I belong to another;
   I'll be ever faithful to him.*
   (Cf.: Я вас люблю, но я другому отдан; я буду век ему верна.)
2. К пятнице он сделал только часть работы (ну и хитрё ж!), а остальное обещал сделать в воскресенье.
   *By Friday he had done only part of the work (the sly dog!), and the rest he promised to do on Sunday.*
   (Cf.: К пятнице он сделал только часть работы, а остальное...)
3. Николай Петрович, сверкая глазами, с гневом сказал Сергею (который после всего происшедшего едва мог поднять глаза): «Не правда ли, это по меньшей мере странно?»
   Nikolai Petrovich, his eyes flashing, angrily told Sergei (who after all that had happened could hardly lift his eyes), “Isn’t it true that this is at least strange?”
   (Compare: Николай Петрович сказал Сергею: «Не правда ли...»)

Notice in #3 above that there is no comma before the relative clause since this clause is enclosed in parentheses. Removing the parentheses would necessitate adding a comma before the word который:

4. Николай Петрович с гневом сказал Сергею, который посle всего происшедшего едва мог поднять глаза: «Не правда ли...»

   If, however, the parenthetical information was absent entirely, there would be no need for a comma:

5. Николай Петрович с гневом сказал Сергею: «Не правда ли...»

   Removing the relative clause altogether would of course result in the deletion of the comma as well.

12.4. The Square Brackets (квадратные скобки)
The square brackets have only a few occasional uses in Russian.

a) Author's additions to quoted matter

As in English, square brackets are used to enclose any alterations, additions, or clarifications made by the author within a quote:

1. Этот сорт [яблока] был скороспелый, или, как говорят садоводы, ранний, то есть самый подходящий для детей.
   *That sort [of apple] was fast ripening, or, as the gardeners say, early, that is, the most appropriate sort for children.*

2. Было спокойно на душе, и всю её [Дашу] слышно до костей пропитала весенний солововой воздух взмёрзья.
Her [Dasha’s] soul was calm; it was as if the salty spring air of the seacoast had penetrated to her bones.

3. Любовь Россия к ней [Волге] неглённа.
Russia’s love for her [the Volga] is immortal.

4. Он [дождь] шумел по кустам, стихал, потом опять начинал шуметь, как будто играл с нами в прятки.
It [the rain] rustled in the bushes, died away, then began to rustle again, as if playing hide and seek with us.

b) The names of speakers in a play

The square brackets may optionally be used to enclose the names of speakers in a play.

1. [Войницкий] Его вторая жена, красавица, умница — вы ее только что видели, вышла за него, когда уже он был стар, отдала ему молодость, красоту, свободу, свой блеск.
[Voinitsky] His second wife, smart and beautiful—you just saw her, married him when he was already old. She gave him her youth, beauty, freedom, her spark.

2. [Трофимов] Как зима, так я голоцен, бóлен, встречён, беден, как нищий, и — куда только судьба не гоняла меня, где я только не был!
[Trofimov] Whenever winter comes, I’m sick, agitated, poor as a pauper and—Lord only knows where fate has sent me, all the places I have been!

c) Phonetic transcription

Square brackets are also used to enclose phonetic transcription in dictionaries and in articles about the structure of language: поздно [пoзna]; солнце [côncias]. This convention is also observed in English.

12.5. The Angle Brackets (угловые скобки)

The angle brackets are used only rarely as marks of punctuation, primarily to enclose the points of omission when this mark is added to a quote that already contains points of omission:

1. Л. Н. Толстóй писал о своей жене: «Она не может отречься от своего чувства <…>. У нее, как у всех женщин, перенесет чувства, и всякое изменение происходит, может быть, незаметное от разума, в чувстве… Может быть, Таня права, что это само собой понемногу пройдет <…>».
L.N. Tolstoy wrote about his wife: “She cannot detach herself from her feelings […] In her, as in any woman, emotions dominate, and any change occurs, perhaps, apart from reason, in emotion… Maybe Tanya is right, and it will gradually go away by itself […]”
Note: In this function, English uses square brackets rather than angle brackets.

Exercise 12.1

Rewrite the following sentences adding the proper symbols in place of the blanks. Pay attention to the order when two or more marks must be placed in succession.

1. Этот сорт ___ груши ___ был скороспелый — самый подходящий для детей.
   
   That sort [of pear] was fast-ripening—the best kind for kids.

2. Я вас не люблю ___ зачём обманывать ___ но вы мне нужны.
   
   I don’t like you (Why deceive?), but I need you.

3. К обеду подали щи ___ суп с капустой ____, тушёное мясо и компот.
   
   For dinner they served shchi (cabbage soup), stewed meat(,) and compote.

4. Спутник на орbitе! Сбываются мечты Циолковского!
   ___ Бурные аплодисменты ___
   
   The sputnik is in orbit! Tsiolkovsky’s dreams are coming true! (Enthusiastic applause.)

5. Он хороший альпинист ___ скалолаз ___
   
   He’s a good alpinist (mountain climber).

6. Он советовал нам не приходить. ___ а мы всё равно придём ___
   
   He advised us not to come. (But we’ll come anyway.)

7. К вечеру поезд пробыл в Ленинград ___ Санкт-Петербург ___
   
   Toward evening(,) the train arrived in Leningrad (Saint Petersburg).

8. Таня улыбнулась ___ неужели? ___ и смущённо отвернулась.
   
   Tanya smiled (really?) and turned away in embarrassment.

9. Потом Ва́ся тайком украл все деньги __ ну и подлец! ___ а сам стал обвивать своего брата.
   
   Then that Vasya secretly stole all the money (the scoundrel!) and later began to accuse his own brother.

10. Вот транскрипция некоторых слов: конечно ___ канешна ___;
   
   пожалуйста ___ пажа́лста ___.
   
   Here’s the transcription of a few words: конечно [канешна]; пожалуйста [пажа́лста].
Chapter 13
Quotation Marks (КавычKI)

Though their shape seems unfamiliar, the Russian кавычKI perform a variety
of functions similar to the English quotation marks. Actually, quotation marks
of the shape «...» normally appear only in printed matter; in handwritten
Russian, they are usually formed with the first pair below the line, the second
above it: „......“.

13.1. Direct Speech

Quotation marks set off direct speech, as in the examples below:

1. Учитель спросил: «А кто сможет ответить на этот вопрос?»
   The teacher asked, “And who can answer this question?”

2. Гамлет сказал: «Быть или не быть — вот вопрос!»
   Hamlet said, “To be or not to be, that is the question!”

   Because punctuating direct speech in Russian involves a number of addi-
tional rules, a full discussion of this topic is reserved for the next chapter.

13.2. Words Used in Some Special Way

A writer can signal that a word is being used in some special way by enclosing it
in quotation marks. For instance, quotes may indicate irony or sarcasm, or that
an obsolete meaning is intended.

1. Сообщи́л он, впи́рьм, только́ об однóй «деловóй сто́ронé дéла».
   He told, however, only about the “business side of the deal.” (irony)

2. Рáно веснóй, как только́ сойдёт снег и стáнет обсыха́ть «вётось»,
   т.е. прошлого́дняя травá, начиная́ются «пáлы», íли лесные́ пожáры.
   In early spring(,) as soon as the snow melts and the “vetosh,” i.e., last year’s
   grass, begins drying out, “paly,” or forest fires, start. (rare words)

3. Эти́ «чуда́чества» редактора иногда́ приводíли нас всех в замеша́тель-
   ство.
   These “capricious interferences” by the editor sometimes drove us all to
distraction. (joking irony)
13.3. Quotation Marks with Names, Epithets, and Titles

Quotation marks are normally used in Russian to set off the following types of names and titles (once again, many of these items are not set off in English at all, or are set off by italics or underlining instead of quotation marks):

1. The titles of newspapers, books, magazines.
2. The names of theaters, cinemas, hotels, restaurants, businesses, ships, sports teams, organizations, etc.
3. The brand names of cars and other merchandise such as television sets, computers, radios, cameras, etc.
4. The name brands of perfumes, cosmetics, cigarettes, candy, etc.
5. Epithets (nicknames and other special names).

Here are some examples:

1. Чтó сегодня идёт в кинотеáтр «Спáртáк»?
   What’s playing today at the Spartak Cinema?

2. Я болéю за «Динаóо».
   I’m a fan of “Dinamo” (a soccer team).

3. Мы пообéдали в «Ара́ги».
   We dined at the Aragvi Restaurant.

4. Гостиница «Пу́лковская» пользуется популярностью у тóуристов.
   The Pulkovskaya Hotel is popular with foreign tourists.

5. Он соверши́л путешествé в Япо́нию на бортé теплохо́да «Любо́вь Орло́ва».
   He made a voyage to Japan on board the ship “Lyubov Orlova.”

6. Э́то было опублико́вано в газéте «Извéстия».
   That was published in the newspaper “Izvestia.”

7. О́на отпра́вила свой расска́з в журна́л «Юность».
   She sent off her story to the magazine “Yunost.”

8. Э́тот актёр ужé ушёл из театра «Совремéнник».
   That actor has already left the “Sovremennik” theater.
9. Ты купил это в магазине «Берёзка}? Did you buy that in a “Beryozka” store?

10. Они застрахованы в «Принадлежит инсуртанс каймани». They are insured by the Prudential Insurance Company.

11. Я ей подарила духи «Серебристый ландыш». I gave her “Serebristy landysh” perfume.

13.4. Review of Marks Used Together with an End Quote

a) A period follows the end quotation mark in Russian. This is true regardless of whether an entire phrase or only a single word is enclosed:

1. Служащий с улыбкой ответил: «Ничем не могу помочь». The clerk answered with a smile, “I can’t help you.”

2. В это время мы подходили к гостинице «Метрополь». At that moment we approached the Metropol Hotel.

   Here Russian differs from American English punctuation, which requires that the period precede the end quote; in Russian the period invariably follows the closing quotation mark.

b) A question mark, exclamation point, or points of omission precedes the final quotation mark if it belongs to the quoted material rather than to the sentence as a whole.

1. Белинский дал подробную оценку роману Чернышевского «Что делать?» Belinsky gave a detailed critique of Chernyshevsky’s novel What is to be done?

2. Он великолепно спел арию Ленского «Куда, куда вы удалились, весны моей златые дни?» He magnificently performed the Lensky aria, “Where, oh where have you gone, golden days of my spring?”

3. Полагая, что мы ответим утвердительно, он спросил: «Вам понравился спектакль?» Assuming we’d answer yes, he asked, “Did you like the show?”


5. Велосипедисты соскочили с велосипедов с громким «Он!» The cyclists hopped off their bicycles with a loud “Opp!”

6. Я уже не мог равнодушно слушать её «Ах, как я устала!» I could no longer listen quietly to her “Oh, how tired I am!”
7. Она прошептала: «Приехали. Наверное, уже утро...»
   She whispered, “They’ve come. It’s probably morning already…”

8. У меня в ушах ещё долго звучал его голос: «Подумаем, подумаем...»
   His voice sounded in my ears a long time afterward: “Well, we’ll think about it…”

9. Снизу донёсся слабый, жалкий крик кухарки: «Горим...»
   From below came the cook’s weak, pitiful shout: “We’re on fire…”

Notice that no period is needed after the closing quotation mark if the quoted material ends in a question mark, exclamation point, or points of omission.

c) If a question mark, exclamation point or points of omission refers to the entire sentence and not to the quoted material, it stands after the end quotation mark.

1. Кто пове́рит этим краси́вым «сќазкам Ве́нского ле́са»!
   Who would believe these beautiful “tales of the Vienna Woods”!

2. Я зна́ю, что эти защи́тные рубе́жи называ́ли «1-ый же́лезный», «2-ой же́лезный»...
   I know that these defensive borders were called “1st iron, 2nd iron…”

3. Вы чита́ли «Войну́ и мир»?
   Have you read War and Peace?

   You will recall that the Russian period—in contrast to the other end marks of punctuation—stands outside the quotation mark regardless of whether it relates to the sentence as a whole. In the first sentence below, the period relates to the entire sentence; in the second, it relates to the quoted material, as well. In either case, the period invariably follows the closing quotation mark.

1. На э́той у́лице есть хоро́шая ма́стерская по ремо́нту «тойо́т».
   On that street there’s a shop that specializes in repairing Toyotas.

2. Ста́рый отве́тил с глубо́ким вздо́хом: «Нет, не поеду я с вами».
   The old man answered with a deep sigh, “No, I won’t go with you.”

d) A comma, colon, and semicolon invariably follows the closing quotation mark.

1. Мы чита́ем сле́дующие газе́ты: «Правда», «Литературная газе́та», «Вече́рняя Москва».
   We read the following newspapers: “Pravda,” “Literary Gazette,” “Evening Moscow.”
2. В Киеве народа называл Владимира "ласковым князем", "красным солнышком".
   In Kiev(,) the people called Vladimir "kind prince," and "red sun."

*Note: You will recall that handwritten Russian quotation marks are shaped differently than those found in a typewritten text. A comma or period following the quotation marks in a handwritten text normally appears more or less directly under the closing quotation mark: „„„“*

13.5. Quotation Marks Used inside Other Quotation Marks

Sometimes, quotation marks must be used to enclose a word or phrase that appears inside material already enclosed within a pair of quotation marks. In such a case, Russian uses a symbol resembling the English **double quotation marks** (either “ ” or “” ) to enclose the material within the larger quote. Here is an example:

Она ответила: «Я приехала вчера на теплоходе „Туркмения“.»
She answered: "I came yesterday on the ship 'Turkmenia'."

English uses **single quotation marks** (‘ ’ ) to enclose words within quoted material. The single quote symbol is not normally encountered in Russian.

*Note: Russian typesetters refer to the symbols (“ ”) and („„) as лапочки, (literally, “little paws”) while the usual Russian quotation marks (« ») are known as ёлочки (“little spruce trees”). In some more recent publications, the usual functions of these two forms of quotes are reversed: the кавычки-лапочки (“ ” or „„) are employed as the primary mark, the кавычки-ёлочки (« ») being confined to the role of inside quotes.

**Exercise 13.1**

Place quotes in the sentences below where appropriate. Be careful about what marks of punctuation proceed and follow a closing quote.

1. У меня автомобиль Нива.
   *I own a Niva. (a type of automobile)*

2. Ты читал Пастернака Доктор Живаго?
   *Did you read Pasternak’s novel Doctor Zhivago?*

3. Тебя понравилась его статья в газете Вечерняя Москва?
   *Did you like his article in the Evening Moscow?*

4. Роман Однажды в жизни Ивана Денисовича впервые появился в журнале Новый мир.
   *The novel One Day in the Life of Ivan Denisovich appeared for the first time in the magazine Novy Mir.*
5. Лариса купила своему Анатолию одеколон Шипр.  
   Larissa bought her Anatoly some Shipr cologne.

6. Лариса сказала Анатолию: Я купила тебе одеколон Шипр.  
   Larissa told Anatoly, “I bought you some Shipr cologne.”

7. Уберёй отсюда свой вонючий Шипр!  
   Get your stinky Shipr out of here!

8. Твоё я умею всё может только помешать делу.  
   Your “I know how to do everything” can only interfere with the task.

9. Все его фортели привели директора в бешенство.  
   All his “monkey business” enraged the boss.

10. Жигули, Волга, Запорожец, Чайка — это марки легковых машин.  
    The Zhiguli, Volga, Zaporozhets, and Chaika are models of cars.

11. В гостинице Космос мы прожили две недели.  
    We stayed two weeks in the Cosmos Hotel.

12. Ты выписывашь газету Нью-Йорк Таймс?  
    Do you subscribe to the New York Times?

13. Достоевский очень критически отозвался о романе Чернышёвского  
    Что делать?  
    Dostoevsky sharply criticized Chernyshevsky’s novel What is to be Done?

14. Ты помнишь наизусть басню Крылова Лиса и виноград?  
    Do you remember by heart Krylov’s fable, “The Fox and the Grapes”?  

15. Вдруг раздалось душераздирающее Держи вора!  
    Suddenly there erupted a heart-rending shout of “Stop the thief!”
Chapter 14
Punctuating Direct Speech

Punctuating direct speech involves using the dash (тире) and the quotation marks (кавычки). Here, Russian punctuation differs markedly from English. In English, dashes are never used to set off quoted material; only quotation marks can be used for this purpose. In this chapter, we will discuss all aspects of punctuating direct speech.

14.1. Punctuating Dialogue When Each New Line is Set off as a Separate Paragraph

In a printed text, each line of dialogue can be introduced by an indentation (абзац). In such a format, a dash must be used to introduce each new line.

— Кáк вас зовёт? — What’s your name?
— Мени́ зовёт Андре́й. — My name is Andrei.
— А менé Йогéр. — Mine’s Igor.

Reporting words such as сказал он, said he, that follow a line of dialogue are set off from the quoted material by a second dash. If the quoted speech is in the form of a declarative sentence, the period at the end is replaced by a comma. This comma is then followed by a dash. A question mark or exclamation point at the end of quoted material remain and no comma is necessary after the closing quote. Here is an example:

— Болéт головá? — спросéла я.
— Болéт. Уснúть бы в сáмый раз, но не уснý,— бóркнул он.
— Эта просто устро́йть,— тут же возрази́ла я.
  “Do you have a headache?” I asked.
  “I do. I’d like to take a nap, but I can’t fall asleep,” he grumbled.
  “That’s easy to arrange,” I objected immediately.

As the above example illustrates, no quotation marks are needed in Russian if the speech of each participant in a dialogue is indented as a separate paragraph.

14.2. Punctuating Dialogue Arranged in a Single Paragraph

Sometimes an author chooses to write the lines of a dialogue in single paragraph form. In this case, dashes and quotation marks are needed to punctuate direct speech. The writer Mikhail Lermontov used this technique in the passage
below. Here, the direct speech is enclosed in quotation marks, while dashes separate the words of one speaker from those of the other.

«А как тебя зовут, певу́нья?» — «Кто крестил, тот знает.» — «А кто крестил?» — «Почему я знаю?» — «Экая скры́тная! А вот я кое-что про тебя знаю» (Лермонтов)

“And what’s your name, singer?” “The person who baptized me knows that.” “And who baptized you?” “How should I know?” “You’re a secretive one, aren’t you! Well I know a thing or two about you.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note: In this example, the periods are written inside the closing quotation mark. This is an outdated convention. In modern Russian, as we have noted, the period follows the closing quotation mark. This is true regardless of whether an entire sentence or only the final word of a sentence is enclosed in quotation marks:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. <strong>Водитель объяснил ему: «Вам нужно будет выходить на следующей остановке»</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The driver explained to him, “You’ll need to get off at the next stop.”</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <strong>Студенты читают роман «Преступление и наказание»</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The students are reading the novel Crime and Punishment.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.3. Punctuation of Direct Speech within a Larger Text

Quotation marks are used to enclose **direct speech** (прямая речь)—that is, the exact words of another writer or speaker—when they appear in a larger text. Quotations of direct speech are usually accompanied by **reporting words** (авторские слова) such as он ответил, *he answered*, они сказали, *they said*, etc. The proper punctuation depends upon whether the reporting words stand before, after, or inside the quoted material.

14.3.1. The Reporting Words Precede the Quote

Recall that a colon must be used in Russian when reporting words precede the quoted material. In English, a comma rather than a colon is normally used for this purpose.

1. **И Иван ответил сурово: «Тебе незачем сюда входить»**.  
   *And Ivan answered severely, “You have no reason to come in here.”*

2. **Родители детям твердят: «Надо учиться»**.  
   *Parents keep telling their children, “You have to study.”*

14.3.2. The Reporting Words Follow the Quote

If, on the other hand, a reporting phrase such as он сказала, *he said*, comes after the quoted material, it is preceded by a dash.
1. «Ты слышишь меня?» — тихо спросил он.
   “Do you hear me?” he quietly asked.

2. «Ветру бы теперь подуть...» — говорит Сергей.
   “If only there were some wind,” says Sergei.

   If the quoted material is a narrative sentence, then the period is deleted
   when a reporting phrase follows. Instead, a comma follows the quote. As we al-
   ready noted, the comma stands outside the end quotation mark in Russian, but
   inside it in English.

   “Read,” he quietly said to me.

2. «Я знала, что вы здесь», — сказала она.
   “I knew you were here,” she said.

   If a question mark, exclamation point, or points of omission stand before
   the final quotation mark, however, a dash without a comma follows the quote:

3. «Читай!» — в ее голосе прозвучало раздражение.
   “Read!” Her voice sounded annoyed.

   You will recall that the dash is also used to separate reporting words from
   reported speech when each line of dialogue is written as a separate paragraph.
   No quotation marks are needed in this format. Here are some more examples:

1. — Не понимаю, — сказал я.
   — И не стараитесь, — усмехнулся Павел.
   “I don’t understand,” I said.
   “Don’t even try,” chuckled Pavel.

   — С радостью. С большой радостью, — закричал я ему в ответ.
   — Чего за радость? Говорите быстрее.
   — Сын у тебя родился! Сын!
   “What news have you brought? Joy or misfortune?” he asked us.
   “What joy? Tell me quick.”
   “You have a son! A son!”

14.3.3. The Reporting Words Interrupt the Quote

If reporting words such as он сказал, he said, interrupt the quoted material,
then the entire quote, including the reporting words, is enclosed in a single pair
of quotation marks. The direct speech is then set off from the reporting words
by dashes. The second part of the quote begins with a capital letter if it consti-
tutes the beginning of a new sentence, and with a small letter if it is a continua-
tion of the same sentence found in the first part of the quote.
The example below shows the proper punctuation when reporting words interrupt a quote:

1. "Хотите ли, доктор,— отвечал я,— чтоб я раскрыл вам мою душу?"
   "Doctor," I answered, "do you want me to bare my soul to you?"

   Notice how the punctuation of quoted material differs depending upon the position of the reporting words.

2. Он прошептал: «А я бы ни за что не пошёл туда».
   He whispered: "I wouldn't have gone there no matter what."

3. «А я бы ни за что не пошёл туда»,— прошептал он.
   "I wouldn't have gone there no matter what," he whispered.

4. «А я,— прошептал он,— ни за что не пошёл бы туда».
   "I," he whispered, "wouldn't have gone there no matter what."

Here, once again, Russian punctuates quoted material differently than English, which uses quotation marks rather than dashes when reporting words interrupt a quotation.

14.4. Punctuation Used with the Dashes that Set off Reporting Words inside Quoted Material

We have already mentioned that a comma plus dash is frequently used to set off reporting words that follow quoted material. Below is a complete list of rules governing the use of other marks of punctuation with dashes in quoted material.

14.4.1. The Reporting Words Interrupt a Sentence

a) If the reporting words interrupt the quote at a place where the quoted material has no internal punctuation at all, then a comma must precede the dash on both sides of the reporting words.

1. «Теперь мы успеем на поезд»,— проговорил он.
   "Now we'll make it to the train," he said.

2. «Теперь,— проговорил он,— мы успеем на поезд».
   "Now," he said, "we'll make the train."

b) If the break appears where a comma stands in the original quote, the comma remains and a second comma follows the reporting words.

1. «Теперь мы успеем на поезд, лишь бы поезд пришёл вовремя»,— проговорил он.
   "Now we'll make the train, if only the train comes on time," he said.

2. «Теперь мы успеем на поезд,— проговорил он,— лишь бы поезд пришёл вовремя».
   "Now we'll make the train," he said, "if only the train comes on time."
c) If the break is made at a place in the quote where a colon or semicolon stands, these marks are replaced by a comma, and another comma is added after the reporting words:

1. «Пора спать: уже поздно», — сказал папа.
   “It’s time to go to sleep because it’s already late,” said papa.

2. «Пора спать,— сказал папа,— уже поздно».
   “It’s time to go to sleep,” said papa. “It’s already late.”

14.4.2. The Reporting Words Follow a Narrative Sentence

If reporting words interrupt the quote at a sentence break, the period that would normally stand at the end of the sentence is replaced by a comma plus dash. The reporting words themselves are closed by a period followed by another dash, and the next line of the quote begins with a capital letter.

1. «Напрашно ты, Валентин, взялся за это дело,— сказал Пётр Петрович, выслушав мой рассказ,— Как ты можешь им помочь?»
   “You shouldn’t have taken on this matter, Valentin,” said Pyotr Petrovich after listening to my story. “How can you help them?”

A sentence-final period is replaced by a comma at the end of any quote if reporting words immediately follow. This is true in Russian and English (although the Russian comma follows the closing quotation mark, and the English comma precedes it).

14.4.3. Reporting Words Following a Question or Exclamation

A question mark or exclamation point followed by reporting words remain and are followed by a dash without a comma. The reporting words themselves are then followed by a period and another dash.

1. «Я-то?— вновь встременулся Митья.— Я уйду».  
   “Me?” exploded Mitya again. “I’ll leave.”

2. «Как ты это читаешь,— шепотом заговорил он.— На разные голоса... Как живые все они...»
   “How well you read that!” he began in a whisper. “Using different voices... All of them so real...”

14.4.4. The Reporting Words Follow Points of Omission

Points of omission at the place of interruption also remain and are followed by a dash without a comma; the reporting words are then followed either by a comma (if the quoted sentence is continued), or by a period (if a new sentence begins).

1. «А где же...— промявлел он,— ваша кепка?»
   “And just where...” he mumbled, “is your cap?”
2. «Да нет...— медленно проговорила она.— Не перебирается он через реку».
   “Oh no...” she said slowly. “He’s not coming across the river.”

14.4.5. The Reporting Words Follow a Closing Parenthesis

A closing parenthesis at the break also remains and is followed by a comma and dash. A second comma and dash combination follows the reporting words:

1. «Этот Мишка (сын дирижёра),— сказал Бажёнов,— явно больной».
   “That Mishka (the manager’s son),” said Bazhenov, “is clearly ill.”

14.4.6. Part of the Reporting Words Refers to the Preceding Quote and Part to the Quote Following

Reporting words may consist of a compound phrase, part of which refers to the preceding quoted material and part to that following. In such cases, a colon and a dash follow the reporting words. The first part of the quote ends with a comma (or any mark of end punctuation except a period) plus a dash:

1. «Ну, распрощались,— промолвил он и чуть слышно прибавил:—
   Вероятно, навсегда».
   “Well, we’ve said our farewells,” said he and then added in a voice barely audible: “Probably forever.”

2. «А кто должен строить жизнь?— победоносно вопрошает он и, бойся,
   что у него предвосхитят ответ на вопрос, тотчас же отвечает:— Мы.
   Самы мы».
   “And who should construct this life?” he asks victoriously and, fearing someone would preempt the answer, immediately replies: “We should. We should ourselves.”

14.5. Quoted Material in the Role of a Primary Sentence Element

If a quoted expression plays some grammatical role in the sentence, it is enclosed in quotation marks. The sentence-initial capital letter and end mark of punctuation (except the period), as well as any internal punctuation is preserved inside the quotation marks. The same conventions are used in English:

1. Его ежедневное «Здравствуйте, дорогая» начало нас раздражать.
   His daily “Hello, dear” began to annoy us.
   (Notice that the period after дорогая has been omitted.)

2. Его ежедневное «Как я рад тебя видеть!» начало нас раздражать.
   His daily “How glad I am to see you!” began to annoy us.
   (The exclamation point is part of the quote and can’t be omitted.)

3. Его ежедневное «Как ваш зовут?» начало нас раздражать.
   His daily “What’s your name?” began to annoy us.
   (The question mark is part of the quote and can’t be omitted.)
In these examples the phrases «Здравствуйте, дорогая», «Как я рад тебя видеть!», and «Как вас зовут?» act as the sentence subject. Such expressions are treated as neuter singular nouns for purposes of adjective and verb agreement.

Notice also that a quoted phrase used as an integral part of a sentence is never set off as a new paragraph.

4. «Хочешь?», «Давай ты» звучало в моих ушах и производило какое-то опьянение (Л. Толстой).
   “‘Wanna?’ and ‘Come on’,” sounded in my ears and produced a sort of intoxication.

Exercise 14.1

Punctuate the following sentences as they would appear in a printed text. Pay attention to direct speech and other elements that might require quotation marks.

1. Доброе утро. “Good morning.”
   Привет. “Hi.”

2. Доброе утро сказал Василий.
   Привет ответил незнакомый парень.
   “Good morning,” said Vasily.
   “Hi,” answered the stranger.

3. На что жалуешься? спросил врач.
   Ноги болят ответил старик.
   “What’s ailing you?” asked the doctor.
   “My legs hurt,” answered the old man.

4. А где деньги? Не знаю. Ты знаешь, да не хочешь признаться. Нет, просто не знаю.
   “And where’s the money?” “I don’t know.” “You do know and don’t want to admit it.” “No, I simply don’t know.”

5. Девочка ответила Я никогда раньше не была в этом городе.
   The little girl answered, “I’ve never been in this town before.”

6. Я никого не видела здесь ответила девочка.
   “I didn’t see anyone here,” answered the little girl.

7. Пишь чище строго говорила учительница.
   “Write more neatly,” the tutor said sternly.

8. Всё понял медленно произнёс Саша.
   “I understand everything.” Sasha intoned slowly.

   Grandma said, “Children, it’s already one. It’s time to eat.”
10. Дёти, ужé час. Порá обéдать сказáла ба́бушка.
   “Kids, it's already one. It's time to eat,” said Grandma.

11. Дёти, ужé час сказáла ба́бушка Порá обéдать.
    “Kids, it’s already one,” said Grandma, “It’s time to eat.”

12. Дёти, ужé час сказáла ба́бушка и решительным то́ном доба́вила Порá
    обéдать!
    “Kids, it's already one,” said Grandma(,) and added in a decisive tone, “It’s
    time to eat!”

13. Её Нет, я не бу́ду прозвучáло ти́хо и нерешительно.
    Her “No, I won’t” sounded quiet and indecisive.
Chapter 15
Symbols Used as Spelling Devices

We have already noted several instances when graphic devices such as the period or capital letter are used for purposes other than punctuation (that is, for some reason other than to separate words or clarify their syntactic interrelationship). Let us now examine how symbols that resemble punctuation are used as spelling devices in Russian. In this section we will also note several grammatical complications involving words spelled with these punctuation-like devices.

15.1. The Apostrophe (апостроф)

The apostrophe (апостроф), or backwards comma (запятая наоборот), as it is sometimes called, is rarely used in Russian. It serves as a spelling device in a few instances.

15.1.1. Foreign Surnames Beginning in А'

French names which begin with d' are rendered in Russian with an apostrophe. Notice that the letter immediately after the apostrophe is capitalized, while the d is not: Жанна д'Арк, Joan of Ark; Жискар д'Эстен, Giscard d'Estaing.

15.1.2. Irish names Beginning in О'

Irish names beginning in O' are rendered in Russian with an apostrophe. In such names the letter O as well as the letter immediately following the apostrophe are capitalized: О'Брэйн, O'Brian; О'Лири, O'Leary; О'Нил, O'Neil; О'Tуэл, O'Tooole.

Note: In older typewritten materials, the apostrophe may be used in place of the hard sign (Ъ). This generally occurred when a typewriter lacks a hard sign key. If a typewriter keyboard has neither a hard sign nor an apostrophe, then the double quotation sign ("), the кавычки-ляпочки, can be used instead. There is no difference in meaning between any of these variants. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Russian</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>объявление</td>
<td>об'явленнє</td>
<td>advertisement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>подъём</td>
<td>под'єм</td>
<td>lift, rise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>въезд</td>
<td>в'єзд</td>
<td>entrance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>съезд</td>
<td>с'єзд</td>
<td>congress</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Today, the hard sign is normally available on all computer keyboards and the alternative variants given above are less common than they once were.

15.2. The Hyphen (дефис or чёрточка)

The hyphen, which in form resembles a shortened version of the dash, is not a mark of punctuation at all. But it is used extensively as a spelling device in both Russian and English.

15.2.1. The Hyphen Used to Write Certain Compound Nouns

Russian has several methods of spelling compound words. Many words used in close association with one another are not compounded at all. Instead, they are written separately (разделенно), that is, with a space between them. On a typeset page, this space (пропуск) is a spelling device, just as the double space directly following a period, question mark, exclamation point, or points of omission is a device of punctuation. Two separate roots may be written together (слитно) as a single word. This creates a blend, if part of one or both roots is cut off. It creates a true compound if neither root is abbreviated.

There is a third way to spell a word that consists of two or more words or truncated stubs of words: the parts may be joined with a hyphen (дефис or чёрточка), creating what is known as a hyphenated compound (сложное слово с дефисом). Russian makes extensive use of the hyphen to spell compound words. The following types of Russian words are spelled with a hyphen:

a) A hyphen is used to write combinations of two Russian nouns where the second is an appositive. Some hyphenated compounds consist of a head noun and an appositive: Москвá-рекá, Moscow River; дуб-велика́н, giant oak; инжене́р-химик, chemical engineer; кресс-салáт, water cress. In others, the two nouns have become so fused in meaning that it is difficult to consider them as anything other than a single noun (ивáн-чáй, rosegay (literally, Ivan-tea): хлеб-соль, hospitality (literally, bread-salt). In such noun + appositive compounds, neither noun is abbreviated and there is no connecting vowel.

Note: In combinations of noun + appositive, both nouns receive a full stress. Also, when used in sentences, these hyphenated nouns require that proper case endings be added to both constituents: Нас встрéтили хлéбом-сóлью, They met us with traditional hospitality; and Котéнок пы́тался поймáть бáбочку-ка́пустницу, The kitten tried to catch a cabbage butterfly.

Hyphenated appositives fall into the following categories according to meaning:

i) **Proper noun + common noun.** A common noun attribute is connected to the following proper noun by a hyphen: Ивáн-цáréвич, Ivan the
Tsarevich; Влади́мир-кня́зь, Prince Vladimir; Москвá-рекá, the Mos-
cow River. No hyphen is needed when the attribute precedes the prop-
er noun: царе́вич Ивáн, кня́зь Влади́мир, рекá Москвá.

ii) A pair of antonyms. The constituent nouns may be semantic opposites
(antonyms): купля-продáжка, buying and selling; отéц-мать, father
and mother; приёмка-выдáча, receipt and issuance; вопрóсы-отвéты,
questions and answers.

iii) A pair of synonyms: грусть-тоска́, sadness and melancholy; радость-
всéлье, joy and mirth; прáвда-йстина, the plain truth; друзья́-
приятéли, friends and acquaintances.

iv) Profession, title, or rank. Some hyphenated compounds denote a pro-
fection, rank, or title. The constituent nouns in such compounds are of-
ten borrowed from another language: фíзик-атоми́щик, atomic physi-
cist; генерáл-губерна́тор, governor general; премьéр-министр, prime
minister; инженéр-механи́к, mechanical-engineer; механи́к-диэлект, 
diesel mechanic; член-корреспондéнт, corresponding member.

v) Item and specific type. In some hyphenated compounds the second
noun denotes a specific type of the first: вагóн-ресторáн, dining car;
шёлк-сыре́ц, raw silk; лён-волокни́о, linen fiber; женщина-космонáвт,
woman cosmonaut; вор-рецидиви́ст, repeat offender; кресло-коло́ска,
wheelchair; плац-палáтка, rain poncho; маг-чернокни́жник, practi-
cioner of black magic.

vi) Item and description. In some hyphenated compounds an appositive
adds an emotional nuance to the meaning of the other noun. In the
following examples, the appositive, which may precede or follow the
main noun, is italicized: бой-бáба, feisty woman; утéс-великáн, giant
cliff; Людми́ла-прéдест, charming Ludmila; гóрóд-герóй, heroic city;
пáй-ма́льчик, good boy; чудó-бóгатýрь, miraculous bogatyr (an an-
cient Russian knight); жáр-пти́ца, firebird.

b) Compound units of measure. The hyphenated compound denotes some
unit of measure, as in: киломéтр-час, kilometer per hour; киловáтт-час,
kilowatts per hour; ампер-секунда, ampers per second; вольт-секунда,
volts per second; грáмм-калóрия, gram calorie; килограмм-секунда, kilo-
grams per second.

Note: If the first noun is not normally a measure, then the connecting
vowel ə (or e) is added, but a hyphen is still needed: человéко-день, man-
day (cf., English man-hour); койко-день, bed-day (in a hospital); тоннáже-
киломéтр, metric tonnage.
c) Compound terminology. A large number of hyphenated compounds serve as special terms in science and engineering. Some of these are terms for various technical devices. Compounds made with the following foreign prefixes are always hyphenated:

пресс-: пресс-фильтр, press filter; пресс-форма, press mold; пресс-шпиндель, press spindle;
блок-: блок-механизм, block mechanism; блок-система, block system;
стоп-: стоп-сигнал, brake light; стоп-кран, shutoff valve.
дизель-: дизель-состав, diesel freight train; дизель-мотор, diesel motor.
вакуум-: вакуум-насос, vacuum pump.
Also: динамо-машина, dynamo; кабель-кран, cable crane; лот-линия, lotline.

Note: All compound words with пресс- are hyphenated, regardless of whether they are special terms: пресс-папье, blotter; пресс-клуб, press club; пресс-конференция, press conference; пресс-бюро, press department; пресс-атташе, press attaché.

d) Foreign prefixes. Some compounds that express profession, status, or rank and contain the following prefixes borrowed from West European languages are hyphenated:

вице-: вице-президент, vice-president
вице-адмирал, vice-admiral
экс-: экс-президент, ex-president
экс-чемпион, ex-champion
ка́мер-: камера-ла́кей, room servant
ка́мер-ю́нкер, gentleman-in-waiting
лейб-: лейб-гва́рдия, life-guards (Tsarist)
лейб-ме́дик, physician in ordinary
обер-: обер-кондуктор, chief guard on a train
обер-лейтенант, first lieutenant
ўнтер-: юнтер-офицер, non-commissioned officer
штаб-: штаб-офицер, officer of field rank (Tsarist)
штаб-кварти́ра, headquarters
штабс-: штабс-капита́н, staff captain (in Tsarist army)

Note: The first component of these and other hyphenated terms normally receives a secondary stress, which is sometimes indicated in dictionaries and pedagogical materials by a grave accent (´).
e) **The syllable пол-, half**, is followed by a hyphen when attached to nouns that begin with any of the following groups of letters:

i) any capital letter: пол-Европы, half of Europe; пол-Москвы, half of Moscow; пол-Лондона, half of London.

ii) any vowel letter: пол-яблока, half an apple; пол-очки, half a point; пол-оборота, half a turn; пол-одниннадцатого, half past eleven.

iii) the letter л: пол-литра, half a liter; пол-лист, half a sheet (of paper); пол-линейки, half a ruler length.

If пол-, half, is added to a noun beginning in any lower case consonant except л, the resulting compound is written without a hyphen: полвторого, half past one, полметра, half a meter; полго́рода, half the city; полдня, half a day; полноч, half a night.

Because we have touched on the topic of compound nouns made with пол/пол-, it might be useful to mention a few other features of these words.

---

**Note 1:** When пол/пол- is prefixed to a noun, the noun takes the genitive singular: половина яблока = половина яблока, half an apple; половина лимона = половина лимона, half a lemon; половина чашки = половина чашки, half a cup. Also, the syllable пол/пол- receives a secondary word stress (marked here with a grave accent ´). 

**Note 2:** These nouns have two alternate ways of forming the genitive, locative, dative, and instrumental. In the literary language, the vowel ы is added after пол/пол-; in colloquial speech this ы is not added. In either style, the noun takes the regular ending for genitive, dative, etc. Examples: полметра, half meter; около полуметра (or около полуметра), around a half meter; с полуметром (or с полуметром), with a half meter.

**Note 3:** An adjective modifying a noun with пол/пол- takes a plural form in the nominative or accusative case:

- каждые полцили
- остальные поляблока

**Note 4:** In the remaining cases (genitive, locative, dative, instrumental), an adjective modifying a noun with пол/пол- takes a singular ending in agreement with the gender of the noun after пол/пол-:

- в этом поляблока (literary поляблока)
- об этом поллимона (literary поллимона)
- изза этого полмил (literary полмила)
Note 5: If a noun with пол/пол- is the subject, the verb normally takes the third person neuter singular form:

1. Полгода пройдет.
   Half a year will pass.

2. Пол-яблока съедено.
   Half an apple has been eaten.

3. Пробило пол-одиннадцатого.
   The clock struck half-past eleven.

But if an adjective modifies a noun with пол/пол-, the verb is plural rather than neuter singular and agrees with the adjective:

4. Остальные полмили были пройдены с трудом.
   The remaining mile and a half were covered with difficulty.
   (Compare: Полмили было пройдено с трудом.)

f) Compound nouns and adjectives denoting political groups or movements are hyphenated and not capitalized: марксизм-ленинизм, Marxism-Leninism; социал-пацифизм, Social Pacifism; анархосиндикализм, anarcho-syndicalism; национал-социалист, National Socialist (Nazi); социал-демократ, Social Democrat.

g) Geographic terms. Certain compound geographic terms are written with a hyphen.


ii) Geographical names are hyphenated if they consist of two nouns, a noun + adjective, or two adjectives: Юрьев-Польский, Yuryev-Polskiy; Покровское-Стрешнево, Pokrovskoye-Streshnevo; Орехово-Зуево, Orekhovo-Zuevo; Поречье-Рыбное, Porechye-Rybnoe. This includes foreign terms, such as Канзас-Сити, Kansas City; Буэнос-Айрес, Buenos Aires; Тадж-Махал, Taj Mahal; Вест-Индия, the West Indies.

iii) The foreign place name prefixes лос-, лас-, сан-, сен-, сент-, сант-, etc., are followed by a hyphen: Лос-Анджелес, Los Angeles; Ла-Пас, La Paz; Лас-Беагас, Los Vegas; Сан-Франциско, San Francisco; Сан-Диего, San Diego; Сент-Пол, St. Paul; Санкт-Петербург, St. Petersburg.
Note: These prefixes are indeclinable in Russian; only the second component of such a hyphenated proper noun may take case endings. (Proper place names ending in -о, -э, -и, -у, or -ю don’t decline either.) Examples:

1. Мой брат живет в Лос-Анджелесе, а не в Сан-Франциско.
   My brother lives in Los Angeles, not in San Francisco.

2. Эрмитаж находится в Санкт-Петербурге.
   The Hermitage is located in Saint Petersburg.

iv) Adjectives formed from hyphenated place names retain the hyphen, but the constituent parts are not capitalized. This follows the general Russian practice of not capitalizing adjectives made from proper nouns (cf., Англия, England, and английский, English). Here are some examples:

   Нью-Йорк, (noun) New York (adj.)
   Санкт-Петербург, (noun) St. Petersburg (adj.)
   Альма-Ата, (noun) Alma Ata (adj.)
   Аму-Дарья, (noun) Amu Darya river (adj.)

v) The small function words ла, де, ле, лос, лас, found in many place names of West European origin are capitalized in Russian and attached with a hyphen to the second part of the name. Examples: Лос-Анджелес, Los Angeles; Ла-Манш, the English Channel; река Ла-Плата, the La Plata River; город Ла-Валетта, the city La Valetta; местечко Де-Аар, the town of De-Aar.

vi) English and American names of streets, boulevards, and squares which include the words street, square, park, avenue, or end are normally rendered in Russian with a hyphen. Examples: Дэулинг-стрит, Downing Street; Мичиган-авеню, Michigan Avenue; Гайд-парк, Hyde Park; Ист-энд, the East End.

Note: Grammatical endings can only be added to the last component of such compounds:

Они жили в маленькой квартире недалеко от Гайд-парка.
They lived in a small apartment not far from Hyde Park.
h) **Compound surnames** are hyphenated. This is true of native Russian as well as foreign surnames. Examples:

- Новиков-Прибо́й, Novikov-Priboi
- Римский-Корсаков, Rimsky-Korsakov
- Мари́я Склодо́вская-Кюрьё, Maria Sklodovskaya-Curie
- Немиро́вич-Данченко, Nemirovich-Danchenko
- Бесту́жев-Рюмин, Bestuzhev-Ryumin

**Note 1:** Both parts of these double surnames decline (except that human names ending in -о, -и, -у, or -ю never decline): му́зыка Римско́го-Корсакова, the music of Rimsky-Korsakov; нау́чные откры́тия Склодо́вской-Кюрьё, the scientific discoveries of Sklodovskaya-Curie; театр Немиро́вича-Да́нченко, the Nemirovich-Danchenko Theater.

**Note 2:** **Chinese names are not hyphenated.** The last two syllables of three syllable Chinese names were until recently hyphenated in Russian, as is the practice in English: Сунь Я́т-сен, Sun Yat-sen; Мао Цэ́дун, Mao Ze-Dong; Ча́н Кай-ши, Chiang Kai-shek. The most recent orthographic practice, however, requires that the last two elements be written as a single word without a hyphen: Сунь Я́тсё́н, Мао Цэ́дун, Ча́н Кай-ши.

i) **Directions of the compass.** Nouns and adjectives which include more than one cardinal point of the compass are hyphenated: юго-восток, southeast; юго-восточный, southeastern; юго-запад, southwest; юго-западный, southwestern; северо-восток, northeast; северо-восточный, northeastern; северо-запад, northwest; северо-западный, northwestern; эоид-вест, southwest; но́рд-ост, northeast.

**Note:** Adjectives denoting points of the compass often modify proper nouns, such as the names of continents, regions, and countries: Северная Америка, North America; Западная Европа, Western Europe; Южная Африка, South Africa. Compound proper adjectives designating geographical or administrative names are hyphenated and capitalized: Южно-Африканская Республика, Union of South Africa; Северо-Американская котловина, North American basin; Восточно-Европейская равнина, East European plain; Западно-Сибирская низменность, South Siberian Depression. However, compound common adjectives made from such terms are written as a single word and not capitalized: североамериканское побережье, North American coast; западноевропейские государства, Western European nations; южноафриканские алмазы, South African diamonds.
j) **Foreign, indeclinable modifiers** which precede the noun require a hyphen: бру́тто-вес, gross weight; ми́ни-ю́бка, mini skirt; элэ́ктрик-цвет, electric light; ко́ми-язы́к, Komi; хинди-язы́к, Hindi.

**Note:** If such combinations are written with the indeclinable modifying word following, no hyphen is needed: язы́к суахи́ли, Swahili; язы́к хинди, Hindi; цвет элэ́ктрик electric light; час пи́к rush hour, etc.

k) A hyphen is used to write certain compound adjectives. In addition to the adjectives made from the hyphenated compound nouns listed above, several other groups of Russian adjectives require a hyphen.

i) Compound adjectives made from the combination of two color terms are hyphenated. Notice that the first adjective ends in a connector vowel (usually -о, less often another letter): жёлто-кра́сный, yellow-red; изжелта-кра́сный, yellowish red; серебри́сто-сё́рый, silvery gray; пепельно-сё́рый, ash-gray; блéдно-ро́зовый, pale pink; сине-фиолéто́вый, bluish purple; и́ссина-чёрный, black with a bluish tint. Only the last adjectival component, which receives the compound’s primary stress, takes grammatical endings. The corresponding English adjectives may be hyphenated as an option, but in Russian, the hyphen is obligatory.

ii) Other compounds made from two adjectives of the same semantic group are also hyphenated and contain the connector vowel о. Many of these compounds correspond to a noun phrase in English: научно-исслéдовательский (институт), scientific research (institute); винно-ли́керный, wine and liquor; русско-английский, Russian-English; англо-ру́сский, Anglo-Russian; шáхматно-шáшечный, chess and checkers; желудочно-кишечный, gastro-intestinal; бобóво-злáковые, leguminosous; сердё́чно-сосу́дистый, cardiovascular.

iii) In some hyphenated compounds, the two adjective components belong to separate semantic groups, but each is equally important to the meaning as a whole: общественно-истори́ческий, socio-historical; формáльно-идеалисти́ческий, formally idealistic; социáльно-эконо́мический, socioeonomical.

iv) Some of these hyphenated compound adjectives contain unusual or self-contradictory semantic combinations. Most of these also correspond to whole phrases in English: кисло-слáдкий, sweet and sour; добра́дусно-хи́тры́, ingenuously sly; гóрко-солённый, bitter and salty; гру́стно-покóрный, sad and humble; цве́тнóе-ру́мáный, glowingly ruddy.
v) Compound adjectives with the first component во́енно- are hyphenated: во́енно-морскóй, naval; во́енно-возду́шный, air force; во́енно-инженéрный, military engineering; во́енно-учё́бный, military training; во́енко́-полевóй (суд), court martial; во́енно-стратéгическéй, pertaining to military strategy.

However, the following adjectival compounds, used mostly as substantives, are not hyphenated: во́еннослéжачий, member of the armed forces; во́енноопле́ннýй, prisoner of war; во́еннообýзанный, person eligíble for military service.

vi) Adjectives formed from the first and last names of famous persons are hyphenated and spelled with lower case letters: о́ска́р-уайльдóвский, of Oscar Wilde; вáльтér-скóттовский, of Walter Scott; рóмё́н-роллáновский, of Roman Rolland.

I) A hyphen is used to connect words repeated for special emphasis.

We saw in Chapter 8 that sentence elements repeated more than once are separated by a comma:

Éду́, édu в чи́стом полé (Пу́шкин).
I keep driving along through the open steppe.

If the first element receives a primary stress, however, then a compound word joined by a hyphen is created. This occurs in the following instances:

i) Often such words are mirror repetitions: большóй-большóй, very large; éле-éле, barely; чуть-чуть, a tiny bit; вот-вот, about to (in time); хóдишь-хóдишь, you walk and walk (constantly).

ii) In other instance, the repetition is only partial. The meaning of intensity in such partial repetitions is usually greater than that conveyed by complete repetitions: давным-давно́, long, long ago; полным-полни́, chock full of; вóлей-невóлей, willy-nilly; (сложи́ть ру́ки) крест-нáкрест, to cross one’s arms; ви́димо-неви́димо, in immense quantity; как-никáк, no matter how you look at it; тóлстый-претóлстый, enormous fat; чернýм-чернó, black as night; рад-радéхонéк, glad as can be; малó-мáльски, exceedingly little; один-единственный, one and only; день-деньскóй, the whole day through; точь-в-точь, precisely, exactly; малó-помáлý, little by little; всé-нáвсегó, all in all only.

iii) Two synonyms repeated one after another may also be connected by a hyphen if they have come to be used to convey a single concept: жéли-бýли, once upon a time; нежда́нно-негáданно, unexpectedly; житьé-бытьё, life, existence; подобрý-поздоро́ву, while the going is good; не сёгóдня-зáвтра, any day now.
iv) Combinations of two number words connected by a hyphen are used to indicate approximation: чéрез два-три дня, in about two or three days; при́мерно пять-шесть, about five or six; спустя три-четыре часа, after three or four hours.

Note: Remember that if the numbers are written with digits, a dash is used instead of a hyphen: чéрез 2—3 дня, in about two or three days; при́мерно 5—6, about five or six; спустя 3—4 часа, after three or four hours.

v) Russian uses compound pronouns to express indefinite meanings such as где-где, а, “where else but,” кто-кто, а, “who else but,” etc. These compound pronouns are hyphenated:

1. Где-где, а в на́шем кра́е дрему́чие леса́.
   Where else but in our district can you find such ancient forests?

2. Кому́-кому́, а нам ну́жно повыше́ние в зарплате́.
   Who else but us needs a raise?
   (= Who needs a raise more than we do?)

3. Что-что, а на́ше умение и опыт мо́жет тепе́рь вь́ручить егó.
   What else but our know-how and experience can save him now?

4. Кто-кто, а уж они́ знают э́то.
   If anyone knows that, they do.
   (If they don’t know, then no one does.)

Note 1: If the pronoun in this type of construction is accompanied by a preposition, a comma replaces the hyphen:

Уж у кого́, у кого́, а у нас всé в по́рядке.
Just who else but us keeps everything in good order.

Note 2: Sentences with this type of special compound pronoun are punctuated as statements in Russian, but their English equivalents are often punctuated as questions. Also, notice that the comma in such constructions is necessary because a comma is always obligatory before the conjunction а.

m) Compounds containing a conjunction, particle, or a finite verb form. Some names of plants are formed in this way: ма́ть-и-ма́чеха, coltsfoot; ива́н-да́ма́рья, cow-wheat; не-тро́нь-меня, touch-me-not.

Note: Compound nouns consisting of an imperative and a noun are not normally hyphenated: скопи́дом, skinflint (literally: hoard + house); гори́цвет, ragged robin (a type of plant; literally: burn + color); гори́хвостка, redstart (a type of bird; literally: burn + tail); сорви́голова, daredevil (literally: tear off + head). Exception: перекати́-пóле, baby’s breath (a type of plant, literally: roll across + field).
n) A hyphen is used in certain adverbs that are abbreviations of longer phrases. There are three groups of such adverbs:

i) Adverbs denoting communication in some language: по-русски (cf., на русском языке), in Russian; по-татарски (cf., на татарском языке), in Tatar; по-английски (cf., на английском языке), in English.

ii) Adverbs made from no plus a dative adjective (the noun being left off). There are several groups of these adverbs:

- To denote opinion: по-моему (= по моему мнению), in my opinion; по-твоему (= по твоему мнению), in your opinion; по-вашему (= по вашему мнению), in your opinion; по-нашему (= по нашему мнению), in our opinion.

- To indicate some way or style of doing something. These adverbs are built on roots denoting animals (or, less often, people) and end in ᵒ-й: по-кошачьи, in a cat-like manner; по-собачьи, in a dog-like manner; по-черепахьи, turtle-like; по-медвежьи, like a bear; по-бабьи, like an old woman; по-мужьи, in a peasant-like way.

- Adverbs with some other temporal or perceptual meaning: по-новому, in a new way; по-старому, as before, in the old way; по-летнему, as is done in summer; по-зимнему, as is done in winter.

There are occasional exceptions when no plus adjective is written as a single word without a hyphen: попусту, in vain; понемногу, slowly, little by little. Also, note the spelling of the following words: поэтому, therefore; потому что, because; почему́, why.

iii) Adverbs of the type in the first place are made by connecting the preposition в (or во) plus hyphen to ordinal numbers. The ordinal number is in the locative plural and is not followed by any noun: во-первых, in the first place; во-вторых, in the second place; во-третьих, in the third place; во-четвертых, in the fourth place; во-пятых, in the fifth place. If the ordinal number is a compound, both constituents are hyphenated: во-трётьи-восьмых, in the thirty-eighth place, etc.

o) A hyphen is used in a few prepositions. The following prepositions denoting movement require a hyphen:

из-за        out from behind, because of
из-под        out from under
по-за        along behind (movement)
по-над        over top of (movement)
A hyphen is used to connect certain particles to words. Some of these particles are used widely in all styles of language; others are mainly a feature of colloquial speech. Below is a discussion of each type:

i) Non-negated indefinite pronouns and adverbs are formed by adding a hyphen plus the particle. The hyphen is used to connect the following four particles to pronouns and adverbs:

- **-то, some:** кто-то, someone; что-то, something; где-то, somewhere; как-то, somehow; почему-то, for some reason; чей-то, someone's; какой-то, some kind of

- **-нибудь, any:** кто-нибудь, anyone; чей-нибудь, anyone's; где-нибудь, anywhere; когда-нибудь, ever; что-нибудь, anything; какой-нибудь, any

- **-либо, any:** кто-либо, anyone; что-либо, anything; когда-либо, ever; где-либо, anywhere; чей-либо, anyone's; какой-либо, any

- **-кое-, a certain:** кое-кто, (a certain) someone; кое-что, something; кое-где, somewhere.

ii) In colloquial Russian, the particle -то can be hyphenated onto other words in a sentence to add some special emphasis:

1. Не забудь письмо-то опустить.
   Don't forget to post that letter.

2. А я-то не видела его.
   I haven't seen him myself.

3. Не так-то просто подыскать толкового директора.
   It's just not all that easy to find an efficient director.

In the first sentence, the particle -то stresses the importance of what is being said; in the second, it adds an element of contrast; in the third it emphasizes the negation.

iii) In colloquial Russian, the particle -ка is joined by a hyphen to imperatives; it usually conveys to the listener a gentle, non-insistent prodding to perform an action:

1. Убери-ка посуду.
   Go ahead and clear away the dishes.

2. Поди-ка умойся.
   You'd better go wash up.

3. Смотрни-ка, какое книжки она стала читать.
   Just look what kind of books she's taken to reading.

In the third example above, -ка also marks emotional intensity.
The particle -ка may also be added to the syllable ну, well, as an intensifier:

4. Ну-ка отойди!
   Well move over, will you!

4) The unstressed particle -таки is also joined by a hyphen to words. It conveys the idea of nevertheless or anyway, and occurs most commonly in the combination всё-таки, nevertheless, an adverb that is used in all styles of speech. In more colloquial speech, -таки may be attached to other words.

Онё-таки емй и да́ли золо́тые моно́ты.
They went ahead and gave him the gold coins anyway.

q) A hyphen is used to connect a number written in digits to the end of a word written out in letters. This type of abbreviation requires a hyphen, although a word consisting of number plus noun or adjective that is written out entirely in letters does not require a hyphen: 10-процентный = десятипроцентный, 10-percent; 8-летний = восьмилетний, 8-year old; 100-километровый = стокилометровый, 100-kilometer. Ordinal numbers may be similarly abbreviated in writing: 1-й = пёрвый, first, 1st; 2-й = второй, second, 2nd; 3-й = трётий, third, 3rd; 20-й = двадцатьй, twentieth, 20th.

r) A hyphen is used in words of the type X-лучи, X-rays, where the first part is a letter from some alphabet and the second a native Russian word. This type of word may begin with a Cyrillic letter or a letter from a foreign alphabet. In either case, the letter is pronounced as its name rather than as its phonetic value. The hyphen is retained even when the name of the letter is spelled out in full: α-частица = алфавета-частица, alpha-particle; γ-излучение = гамма-излучение, gamma radiation.

s) A hyphen is used in abbreviations consisting of the names of foreign letters that are pronounced as syllables. These are usually the names of organizations: Би-Би-Си, BBC; Си-Би-Эс, CBS; Эм-Ти-Ви, MTV. Notice also that each part of such foreign alphabetisms begins with a capital letter.

t) A hyphen may be used to indicate that a syllable should be pronounced long. This is an expressive device used in writing to convey more accurately the cadence of the spoken language. The hyphen is used for this purpose in both English and Russian.

1. Ну-у! Великолепно!
   We-ell! That’s marvellous!

2. Та-ак, сейчас посмотрим, кто прав, а кто неправ.
   Oka-ay, now we’ll see who is right and who is wrong.
u) A hyphen is used in compound interjections and onomatopoetic words (звукоподражательные слова). Examples: ей-богу, by God; ап-чхи, Ah-choo; кря-кря, quack, quack; гав-гав, bow wow; мяу-мяу, meow, meow; etc.

Exercise 15.1

Rewrite the following Russian words correctly, either as a single word or by adding a hyphen or apostrophe.

1. давным давнó (long, long ago)
2. во вторóй (in the second place)
3. пол однóнадцатого (10:30)
4. пол вторóго (1:30)
5. город Лас Вéгас (the city of Las Vegas)
6. Нью Йорк (New York)
7. Йóрк князь и князь Йóрк (Prince Igor)
8. пол Москвы (half of Moscow)
9. Пуэрто Рíко (Puerto Rico)
10. что нибудь (anything)
11. по итальянски (in Italian)
12. много много (very many)
13. Жáнна д Арк (Joan of Arc)
14. β частица (beta particle)
15. 10 километрóвый (ten kilometer, adjective)
16. бутылка из под пíва (a beer bottle)
17. из за двери (out from behind the door)
18. Оклахóма Сéти (Oklahoma City)
19. всё таки (nevertheless)
20. пол города (half the city)
21. пол Киéва (half of Kiev)
22. 100 процентный (one hundred percent, adjective)
23. Москва река and рекá Москва (the Moscow River)
24. рекá Вольга (the Volga River)
25. красно жёлтый (reddish yellow)
26. Санкт Петербург (St. Petersburg)
27. Оскар Уайльд and óскáр уайльдовский (Oscar Wilde)
28. пресс папье (paper weight)
29. чéрез три четырéе часó (in three or four hours)
30. час пик (rush hour)
31. Хуан де ла Круэ (Juan de la Cruz, a person)
32. по новому (in a new way)
33. по мбему (in my opinion)
34. по егó мнéнию (in his opinion)
35. Дай ка мне э́ту книгу. (Go ahead and give me that book.)
15.3. The Hyphen Used to Divide a Word at the End of a Line of Type

The hyphen is regularly used to divide words at the end of a line of print. This spelling convention belongs, of course, primarily to typewritten or printed texts. The rules of hyphenation (пере́но́ч) used by Russian differ from the English in many respects. Here are the Russian rules of hyphenation:

a) Several hyphenation rules involve the number or type of letters in the word.

i) Don't leave a single letter or consonant cluster stranded on either side of the break. For example, the following divisions are incorrect: стрелá, ст-релá, стр-елá, стрел-á, *arrow*. Correct: стре-лá.

ii) An entire consonant cluster at the end of a syllable is not normally left on the first line. The following divisions are not correct: предста́витель, *representative*; образо́вание, *education*; воскресе́нье, *Sunday*. The correct divisions are: образо́вание, образо́вание, образо́вание, воскресе́нье, воскресе́нье; предста́витель, предста́витель, представитель.

iii) Don't separate a soft sign (ъ), hard sign (ъ), or the letter (й) from the letter preceding it. The following divisions are correct: нель-зя́, *forbidden*; поль-за́, *use*; рай-ён, *district*; по́й-дём, *let's go*; вой-нá, *war*; объявле́ние, *advertisement*; подъ-ём, *rise*, *lift*.


b) Other rules take into account the meaning of each individual part of the word. If a word consists of clearly separable morphemes (мorfёмы), or meaningful units, it is best to divide at the boundary between these units, rather than according to the rules given above. Hyphenate between prefix and root, or suffix and root (but remember not to strand any single letter or consonant cluster on either side of the break). Here are the rules that take morphology into account when dividing words:

i) Avoid hyphening a word in such a way that the final consonant of a prefix is carried over with the root: since the word распи́сание, *schedule*, contains a clear division between the prefix рас and the root пис, the variant рас-писа́ние is correct, rather than ра-писа́ние. Likewise, предста́витель, *representative*, is the correct division rather than предста́витель.

ii) Similarly, avoid detaching a root consonant and adding it to a prefix. Thus, the division со-трудник, *co-worker*, (not сот-ру́дник) is correct, as is по-просить, *to request*, (rather than the incorrect поп-просить).
iii) Do not divide a prefix from a following ы. The division поды́то-жить, to sum up, (not поды́тожить) is correct, as is разы-скать, to hunt up, (instead of разы-искать). By contrast, the division по-искать is correct.

iv) Avoid breaking off the final root consonant and joining it to the suffix (though doing so is technically not incorrect). Thus, the variant прямóр-ский is preferable to прямóр-ски́й, the variant лóв-ки́й is preferable to лóв-кый, and род-нóй is preferable to ро-днóй.

v) Compound words are divided at the boundary between their constituent parts: спец-одё́жда, special clothing; зар-плата, salary; самолё́т, airplane; законо-проект, bill, piece of legislation; паро-хóд, steamship.

c) In words such as сестра́, sister, which do not consist of clearly defined morphemes, the following rule applies: A consonant cluster may be dealt with in either of the following two ways: се-стрá (the entire cluster is carried over), сес-трá, сестрá (part of the cluster is carried over). The whole consonant cluster, however, is normally not left on the first line. Similarly, it is not possible to hyphenate between a single consonant and a vowel. The single consonant should be carried over to the next line. Thus, the division ка-рандáш, pencil, is correct (instead of кар-анда́ш).

Exercise 15.2

Hyphenate each of the following Russian words in as many ways as possible.

1. племя́нник (nephew) 2. написа́ть (to write)
3. сочинение́ (composition) 4. корóва (cow)
5. медвежо́нок (bear cub) 6. пíсьменный (written)
7. поссóриться́ (to argue) 8. сестра́ (sister)
9. англи́йский (English) 10. скóльзкий (slippery)
11. ма́сса (mass) 12. моско́вский (Moscow)
13. завтра́ (tomorrow) 14. коммúна (commune)
15. предвидеть (to foresee) 16. рассердить́ся (to get mad)

15.4. The Capital Letter (прописная́ бу́ква)

In Part Two we mentioned that the capital letter is often used as a device of punctuation. Now let us examine the uses of the capital as a spelling device.

Certain words in Russian must begin with a capital letter regardless of whether they begin a sentence. This use of the capital letter is a spelling device rather than a mark of punctuation. English and most other European languages also use the capital letter as a spelling device. Some of the rules for capitalization have been mentioned above in the sections on the apostrophe and the hyphen. Below is a more complete list of rules.
15.4. The Capital Letter

15.4.1. Words Capitalized in Russian and English

The following types of words must begin with a capital letter in either Russian or English:

a) Names of people
   i) The proper names of people, as well as their initials: А. С. Пушкин, 
      A.S. Pushkin; Юрий Гагарин, Yuri Gagarin; Софья Ковалевская, 
      Sofya Kовалевская.
   ii) Both parts of a hyphenated surname are capitalized: Мусин-Пушкин, 
       Musin-Pushkin; Мельников-Печерский, Melnikov-Pechersky.
   iii) Also capitalized are nicknames and epithets used as part of a name: 
        Александър Македонский, Alexander the Great; Карл Великий, 
        Charlemagne; Вильгельм Завоеватель, William the Conqueror; 
        Ричард Львиное Сердце, Richard the Lion-Hearted; Иван Калита, 
        Ivan the Moneybag (Ivan I of Moscow); Дмитрий Донской, Dmitry 
        Donskoi.

   Note: Possessive adjectives formed by adding the suffixes -ов (-ев) or -ин 
   (-ын) to people’s names are also capitalized. This includes adjectives made 
   from first names: Олег -> Олёгова книга, Oleg’s book; Надя -> Надина 
   комната, Nadya’s room; Катя -> Катин учебник, Katya’s textbook; and 
   from surnames: Эйфель -> Эйфельева башня, the Eiffel Tower; Гегель -> 
   Гегелева логика, Hegel’s logic; Врубель -> Врубелев «Демон», Vrubel’s 
   Demon; Даль -> Далев «Толковый словарь», Dal’s dictionary.

   However, possessives made from proper nouns that have lost their original 
   possessive meaning and have come to be used as common adjectives 
   generally require no capitalization in Russian, even if the corresponding 
   English phrase retains the capital letter: ахиллесова пятá, Achilles’ heel; 
   адамово яблоко, Adam’s apple, базедова болезнь, Basedow’s disease.

   iv) Certain prefixes on surnames are capitalized, as is the first letter of the 
       rest of the name:
       • Latin Saint: Санкт-Петербург, Saint-Petersburg.
       • Irish O: О’Коннель, O’Connell; О’Кейси, O’Casey.
       • Scottish Mac: Мак-Грёгор, MacGregor; Мак-Интош, MacIntosh.

   In European surnames (unlike place names) the particles ле, ла, л, да, д, 
   де, ван are not capitalized, nor do they require a hyphen: Леонардо да Винчи, 
   Leonardo da Vinci; Людвиг ван Бетховен, Ludwig van Beethoven; Васко да 
   Гама, Vasco da Gama; Жанна д’Арк, Joan of Arc; Хуан де ла Круз, John de 
   la Cruz.
v) The spelling of East Asian names requires special mention. Also, Chinese names are treated differently than other East Asian names in regard to the rules of capitalization.

- Chinese names consist of three parts. The first two are capitalized; the third syllable is not capitalized and is attached to the middle syllable by a hyphen (old style) or written together with the second syllable (new style): Дэн Сяопин, Deng Xiao Ping; Чжоу Эньлай, Zhou En Lai.

- In Vietnamese names, all syllables are capitalized and no hyphen is used: Чан Хынг Дайо, Trang Hu'ng Dao; Хо Ши Мин, Ho Chi Min.

- Similarly, in Korean names, all the syllables are capitalized and no hyphen is used: Ким Ир Сен, Kim Il Sung; Парк Чан Хи, Park Chung Hee.

- Both parts of Japanese names are capitalized: Тоётоми Хидэо, Toyotomi Hideyoshi; Санаи Хасимото, Sanai Hashimoto.

vi) Certain Central Asian and Middle Eastern names require a hyphen. In Turkish, Egyptian, Persian, and Tatar names, the final syllable denoting noble rank is not capitalized and is joined to the rest of the name by a hyphen: Исмаил-бей, Ishmail Bey; Нахас-паша, Nakhas Pasha; Чингиз-хан, Chinggiz Khan; Турсун-заде, Tursun Zade; Рахмет-заде, Rakhmet Zade.

b) Names of places

i) The names of countries, provinces, cities, or towns are capitalized: Россия, Russia; Суздаль, Suzdal; Чикаго, Chicago; Монреаль, Montreal; Украина, Ukraine; Флорида, Florida.

ii) Native Russian geographical terms such as река, river; море, sea; океан, ocean; залив, bay; бухта, (small) bay; мыс, cape; лиман, liman; берег, coast; побережье, coast; остров, island; полуостров, peninsula; гóry, mountains; хребёт, crest; полюс, pole, which form part of a compound place name are written with small letters, whereas any modifying adjectives or possessive nouns are capitalized. (In English, each word in such compounds is capitalized): Берингово море, Bering Sea; мыс Доброй Надежды, Cape of Good Hope; бухта Согласия, Agreement Bay; Гавайские острова, the Hawaiian Islands; острова Дружбы, the Friendly Islands; атолл Бикини, Bikini Atoll; Днепровский лиман, Dnepr Liman; Персидский залив, Persian Gulf; Скалистые гóry, the Rocky Mountains; Северный полюс, the North Pole; озеро Мичиган, Lake Michigan; Канарские острова, Canary Islands. (Note, however, that in Берег Слоновой Кости, Ivory Coast, the word берег, coast, is capitalized because it begins the name of a country; another
such example is the country name Багамские Островы, Bahama Islands.

The same is true of proper noun compounds containing the names of man-made places: улица, street; дорога, road; парк, park; площадь, square; проспект, prospect; шоссе, highway; улица Гоголя, Gogol Street; Военно-Грузинская дорога, Georgian Military Highway; Красная площадь, Red Square; мост Лейтенанта Шмидта, Lieutenant Schmidt Bridge; Панамский канал, Panama Canal; Суэцкий канал, Suez Canal.

If the compound contains no regular geographic term, however, then both adjective and noun are capitalized: Новая Земля, Novaya Zemlya; Садовое Кольцо, the Garden Ring Road. The same is true if the noun itself is a non-Russian word: Голубой Нил, the Blue Nile; Западное Самоа, Western Samoa.

iii) If a compound place name consists of non-Russian words, each part is capitalized (the constituent parts, as noted in the previous section, are joined by a hyphen): Сент-Люсиа, Saint Lucia; Сент-Винсент, Saint Vincent; Пуэрто-Рико, Puerto Rico; Коста-Рика, Costa Rica; Улан-Батор, Ulan Bator; Тель-Авив, Tel Aviv; Шри-Ланка, Sri Lanka; Санто-Доминго, Santo Domingo; Солт-Лейк-Сити, Salt Lake City; Карнас-Сити, Kansas City; Форт-Уэрт, Fort Worth.

iv) Prefixes and particles from Western languages, such as la, le, de, d, лас, лос, are capitalized and followed by a hyphen when they begin a place name: Лас-Безас, Las Vegas; Лос-Анджелес, Los Angeles; Дел-Лас-Пе́рлас, De las Perlas; Де-Мойн, Des Moines. (As part of surnames, you will recall, these particles are neither capitalized nor hyphenated in Russian: да Винчи, da Vinci.)

v) Prefixes and particles between nouns in a place name are hyphenated but not capitalized. (In English, such place names are hyphenated only if the name derives from a foreign language other than Spanish.) Examples: Порт-о-Принс, Port-au-Prince; Фор-де-Франс, Fort-de-France; Порт-оф-Спейн, Port of Spain; Винья-дель-Мар, Viña del Mar; Могилёв-на-Днепрэ, Mogilev-na-Dnepre; Космосольск-на-Аму́ре, Komsomol'sk-on-Amur; Росто́в-на-Дону, Rostov-on-Don; Рио-Гранде-дель-Норте, Rio Grande del Norte.

c) Names of gods and mythological beings

The names of gods and mythological beings, like the proper names of living beings, are capitalized: Геркулес, Hercules; Аполлон, Apollo; Пегас, Pegasus; Зевс Громовержец, Zeus the Thunderhurler; Перун, Perun; Велес, Veles.
d) Names of historical events and epochs

The names of major historical events and epochs are capitalized: Возрождение, the Renaissance; Реформация, the Reformation.

If the name consists of both nouns and adjectives, the nouns are not capitalized: Смутное время, the Time of Troubles; Полтавская битва, Battle of Poltava; Бородинский бой, Battle of Borodino; Петровская эпоха, the Petrine era; Долгий парламент, the Long Parliament; Империалистическая война, the Imperialist War (Soviet name for World War One); Отечественная война, the Fatherland War (against Napoleon in 1812); Столетняя война, the Hundred Years War; Великая Отечественная война, the Great Patriotic War (the Soviet name for World War Two); войны Алои и Белой розы, the War of the Roses.

e) Names of pet animals

The names of pet animals are capitalized: Киса, Kisa (cat); Мурка, Murka (cat); Булька, Bul'ka (dog); Жучка, Zhuchka (dog); Полкан, Polkan (dog); Каштанка, Chestnut (dog); Красавка, Beauty (cow); Сивка, Sivka (horse).

f) Names of organizations and businesses

Only the first letter of the first word is capitalized in the names of organizations, businesses, theaters, banks, commercial trademarks, airplanes, ships, factories, etc. This includes foreign as well as native Russian names: Chase National Bank; Социальная администрация, Social Security Administration; Большой театр, the Bolshoi Theater.

Note: All the content words are capitalized in the names of major world organizations: Организация Объединённых Наций, United Nations; Общество Красного Креста, Red Cross Society.

g) Names of newspapers, magazines; titles of works of music, literature or art

In Russian, one must capitalize only the first letter of the first word of the name of any newspaper, magazine, book or work of art or music. Other words in the title are not capitalized unless they are proper nouns. Also, remember that titles are enclosed in quotation marks in Russian, but written in italics in English: комедия «Горе от ума», the comedy Woe from Wit; опера «Иван Сусанин», the opera Ivan Susanin; «Джоконда», the Mona Lisa; роман «Война и мир», the novel War and Peace; роман «Очи чёрные», the love song Dark Eyes; балет «Жизель», the ballet Giselle; газета «Огни Владу-
восто́ка», the newspaper Vladivostok Lights; газе́та «Пра́вда», the newspaper Pravda; журна́л «Но́вый мир», the journal Novy Mir.

15.4.2. Words Capitalized in English but Not in Russian

You may have noticed from the above examples that English makes greater use than Russian of the capital letter as a spelling device. (Other European languages make even greater use: in German, every noun—proper and common—must begin with a capital letter.) English capitalizes the following groups of words which ARE NOT capitalized in Russian. In Russian, the following words are written with a small letter (стро́чная бу́ква) unless they occur at the beginning of a sentence:

a) The first person singular pronoun я, I.

b) However, plural forms of “you” (вы, ваш, вам, etc.) that refer to a single individual ARE capitalized in personal and business letters. Forms of the polite singular вы, however, are not capitalized when they appear in other contexts.

c) The days of the week: понедельник, Monday; вторник, Tuesday; среда, Wednesday; четверг, Thursday; пятница, Friday; суббота, Saturday; воскресенье, Sunday.

d) The months of the year: январь, January; февраль, February; март, March; апрель, April; май, May; июнь, June; июль, July; август, August; сентябрь, September; октябрь, October; ноябрь, November; декабрь, December.

e) The Russian equivalents of Mr., Mrs., etc.: господин Смит, Mr Smith; госпожа Смит, Mrs Smith; товарищ Иванов, Comrade Ivanov; гражданин Петрёв, Citizen Petrov. The same is true for the Russian spellings of titles such as “doctor” or “professor”: доктор Живаго, Dr. Zhivago; профессор Павлов, Professor Pavlov.

f) Words in certain compound place names (in contrast to human names, all parts of which are capitalized):

i) In a compound place name consisting of an adjective (or adjectives) and a noun, only the first letter of the first adjective is capitalized in Russian: Кры́мский полу́остров, Crimean Peninsula; Чёрное море, Black Sea; Большой теа́тр, the Bolshoi Theater; Красная пло́щадь, Red Square; Северный ледо́вый океа́н, Arctic Ocean.

ii) In a compound geographical term containing a genitive modifier, common nouns such as улица, street; остров, island, etc., are not capitalized: улица Гёрько, Gorky Street; остров Кадьк, Kodiak Island.
Note the following exceptions, where Russian capitalization resembles English:

a) The noun is a foreign geographical term: Голубой Нил, the Blue Nile.

b) The noun is part of the official name of a country: Берег Слоновой Кости, Ivory Coast; Республика Островов Зеленого Мыса, Republic of Cape Verde Islands.

g) As noted previously, Russian generally capitalizes only the first word in the name of a company, a historical event or epoch, or in the title of a work of art or literature, while English capitalizes all content words: «Отец и дети» Тургенева, Turgenev's Fathers and Sons; Большой театр, the Bolshoi Theater, etc.

h) Occasionally, an acronym or abbreviation is not capitalized in Russian when its equivalent in English is. Example: сипид, AIDS.

Exercise 15.3

The following words are written in all capitals. Rewrite them in small letters, using capitals only as required for proper spelling.

1. Понедельник (Monday)
2. Улица Пушкина (Pushkin Street)
3. Вторая Мировая Война (World War Two)
4. Красная Площадь (Red Square)
5. Роман «Преступление и наказание» (the novel Crime and Punishment)
6. Газета «Правда» (the newspaper Pravda)
7. Лев Николаевич Толстой (Lev Nikolaevich Tolstoy)
8. Господин Смит (Mr. Smith)
9. Товарищ Иванов (Comrade Ivanov)
10. Профессор Костров (Professor Kostrov)
11. МГУ (Moscow State University)
12. Леонардо да Винчи (Leonardo da Vinci)
13. Солт-Лейк-Сити (Salt Lake City)
14. Россия (Russia)
15. Русский язык (the Russian language)
16. Американец (American, noun)
17. Февраль (February)
18. Санкт-Петербург (St. Petersburg, noun)
19. Санкт-Петербургский (St. Petersburg, adjective)
20. Олегова комната (Oleg's room)
21. Ла-Манш (the English Channel)
22. Белый Нил (the White Nile)
23. СРЕДИЗЕМНОЕ МОРЕ (the Mediterranean Sea)
24. ОКТЯБРЬ (October)
25. ЯПОНСКОЕ МОРЕ (the Sea of Japan)

15.5. Use of the Period with Abbreviations (сокращения)

15.5.1. Abbreviations Which Require a Period

Many abbreviations end in a period. Below is a list of the most common of these abbreviations:

в. for век century
г. for год year
гр. for гражданин citizen
до н. э. for до нашей эры B.C. (literally, before our era)
н. э. for нашей эры A.D. (literally, of our era)
ж. д. for железная дорога railroad
и др. for и другие and others, et al.
и пр. for и прочее and other things, and so forth
и т. п. for и тому подобное and so on
и т. д. for и так далее etc., and so forth
им. for имени named after

(as in Парк им. Го́рького, Gorky Park)

к. for копейка kopek
кв. for квартира apartment
м. for минута minute
напр. for например for example
р. for рубль ruble
also for река river
с. г. for сего года this year
с. х. for сельское хозяйство agriculture
см. for смотрю look
ср. for сравни compare, cf.
стр. for страница page
t. for товарищ comrade
also for том volume (of printed matter)
tов. for товарищ comrade
тт. for товарищи comrades
also for тома volumes (of printed matter)
t. е. for то есть that is, i.e.
ул. for улица street
ч. for час hour

Other abbreviations requiring periods include the first two initials of a person’s name, such as А. С. Пу́шкин, A.S. Pushkin.
Note 1: Russians normally write these two initials when discussing well-known people. Example:

Брат А.П. Чéхова, Алексáндров, как-то писáл другóму брáту, Михáйлу, об этом же периоде жизни семейства Чéховых.

(A.P.) Chekhov’s brother, Aleksandrov, once wrote to another brother, Mikhail, about this period in the life of the Chekhov family.

In English, the initials in such a name as A.P. Chekhov are omitted more often than not; in Russian, they are normally present.

Note 2: When an abbreviation comes at the end of a sentence, only one mark is written, not two. This rule applies in Russian and English.

1. А. С. Пúшкин родíлся в 1799 г.
A.S. Pushkin was born in 1799.

2. В магазíне они купíли соль, мáсло, хлеб и т. д.
At the store they bought salt, butter, bread, etc.

15.5.2. Abbreviations Which Do Not End in a Period

Several types of Russian abbreviations do not end in a period. These include the following groups:

a) Metric measurements

\begin{align*}
\text{м} & \quad \text{for метр} \quad \text{meter} \\
\text{см} & \quad \text{for сантимéт} \quad \text{centimeter} \\
\text{мл} & \quad \text{for миллильтр} \quad \text{milliliter} \\
\text{мм} & \quad \text{for миллиметр} \quad \text{millimeter} \\
\text{кг} & \quad \text{for килогрáмм} \quad \text{kilogram} \\
\text{км} & \quad \text{for киломéтр} \quad \text{kilometer}
\end{align*}

b) Acronyms (аббревиатуры)

Acronyms are words made up of the first initials of several words. In Russian, most acronyms consist entirely of capital letters (прописные буквы). A few are written using only small letters (стрóчные буквы). Such acronyms are also pronounced as regular syllables rather than by sounding out the names of the constituent letters, as most acronyms written in all capitals are pronounced.

Examples of regular acronyms:

\begin{align*}
\text{вуз} & \quad \text{for вýсшее учéбное заведéние, institution of higher learning} \\
\text{спид} & \quad \text{for синдрóм приобретённóго имúнного дефицýта, AIDS} \\
\text{ОРС} & \quad \text{for о́стрыи респириатурóнный синдрóм, SARS} \\
\text{ГУМ} & \quad \text{for Госудáрственный универсáльный магазин, GUM}
\end{align*}
Examples of alphabetisms (acronyms made by partly or completely sounding out the constituent letters):

МГУ for Московский государственный университет, Moscow State University
ООН for Организация Объединённых Наций, UN or United Nations
США (pronounced “es-sha-a”, or “shu-sha-a”) for Соединённые штаты Америки, USA or United States of America

Note: Regular acronyms such вуз, which are pronounced as regular words rather than by sounding out the names of their separate letter constituents, take case endings like regular nouns. This also includes acronyms such as ГУМ (pronounced goom, not ge-oo-em) that are written with all capitals:

1. Я купила эту шапку в ГУМе.
I bought that hat in GUM.

2. В вузах учатся самые талантливые молодые умы.
The most talented young minds study at institutions of higher learning.

Conversely, alphabetisms (whose pronunciation is based partly or completely on the names of their separate constituent letters) do not take case endings:

1. Этот вопрос обсуждается в ООН.
That question is being discussed at the UN.

2. Он проучился в МГУ год.
He studied for a year at MGU.

c) Stub compounds (сложносокращённые слова)

A stub compound is a combination of two abbreviated words joined into a single word. Each constituent part of a stub compound is an abbreviation (сокращение). Stub compounds differ from true compound words (сложные слова), whose constituent parts are whole words rather than abbreviations. Stub compounds proliferated in Russian during the Soviet period. Here are a few:

зарплата for заработная плата, salary
спецодежда for специальная одежда, special clothing
строительные материалы for строительные материалы, building materials
d) Hyphenated abbreviations

Most abbreviations containing hyphens do not end in a period. The most important of these are the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>г-н</td>
<td>for господи́н</td>
<td>Mr.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>г-жа</td>
<td>for госпо́жа́</td>
<td>Mrs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>р-н</td>
<td>for райо́н</td>
<td>district</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>п-ов</td>
<td>for полуо́стров</td>
<td>peninsula</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>о-во</td>
<td>for общес́тво</td>
<td>society</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A few abbreviations containing hyphens do end in a period. These are abbreviations of compound adjectives. Notice that the abbreviations of the corresponding noun phrases do not contain a hyphen.

Abbreviated noun phrase | Abbreviated compound adjective
-------------------------|---------------------------------|
ж. д. = железная дорого́, | ж.-д. = железнодорожно́й         |
                      | railroad                         |
с. х. = сельское хо́зяйство, | с.-х. = сельскохозайсвенный     |
                      | agriculture                      |

Exercise 15.4

Rewrite the following abbreviations, using a capital only where necessary as a spelling device. Add periods or hyphens as required.

1. М (метр, meter)
2. И Т Д (и так да́лее, etc.)
3. Г (год, year)
4. СТР (страй́ца, page)
5. Ж Д (желе́зная дорога́, railroad, noun)
6. Ж Д (железнодорожный, railroad, adjective)
7. МГУ (Моско́вский госуда́рственный университет, Moscow State University)
8. Р Н (райо́н, district)
9. С Х (сельское хо́зяйство, agriculture, noun)
10. ООН (Организа́ция Объединенных На́ций, UN, or United Nations)
11. УЛ (у́лица, street)
12. КВ (кварти́ра, apartment)
13. КГ (кило́грамм, kilogram)
14. ГГ (го́дь, years)
15. И ДР (и дру́гие, and others)
Chapter 16
Symbols Used with Numerals (Цифры)

Numerals are themselves a type of symbol. Like other European peoples, Russians use Arabic numerals (арабские цифры, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9) and Roman numerals (римские цифры, I, II, III, IV, V ... X). Numerals are used in a Russian text much as they are in English. The punctuation-like symbols that accompany numerals, however, sometimes differ from those familiar to English speakers.

16.1. The Comma (запятая) Used with Numbers

Russian uses a comma as the decimal point in non-whole numbers; English uses a period to set off a fraction from the whole number when the two are written in decimal form:

1. Russian: 2,5 (read as две целых и пять десятых)
   English: 2.5 (read as two point five)

2. Russian: 12,6 (read as двенадцать целых и шесть десятых)
   English: 12.6 (read as twelve point six)

3. Russian: 28,7 (двацать восемь целых и семь десятых)
   English: 28.7 (twenty eight point seven)

English also uses a comma to divide very large whole numbers into groups of three digits, as in the numbers 34,000, or 1,367,780. Russian never uses a comma for this purpose. Instead, a small amount of empty space is normally left between the groups of three digits: 34 000, and 1 367 780. This space, known as знак отбивания (separation mark), is usually about half the size of the space (пробел) used to separate individual words.

Thus, the comma used with numerals has entirely different functions in Russian and English, as the following example illustrates:

4. По современным данным, скорость света в вакууме равна
   299 792 456, 2 + 0,8 м/с.
   According to the latest calculations(,) the speed of light in a vacuum equals
   299,792,456.2 +0.8 m/s.

Some Russians divide large numbers with a period instead of a space, but this usage is not considered correct.
16.2. Symbols Used in Writing Dates

As we previously noted, dates that indicate the month as well as the year do not require a comma after the month. Note the following dates, where part is written in words, the other part in numerals:

1. двадцатье ма́я 1995 г.
   (ты́сяча девятьсот де́сятый год)
   May 20, 1995

2. 20-е ма́я 1995 г.
   the 20th of May, 1995

3. ма́й 1995 г.
   May, 1995 (or May 1995)

4. в ма́е 1995 г.
   in May, 1995 (or in May 1995)

Note: If part of the date is written out with words, then the numerals denoting the year will be followed by the abbreviation г., which denotes год, year. The abbreviation for годы, years, is гг. Examples: 60 гг., the 1960's; 1941-45 гг., 1941-1945. As these examples show, г. and гг. are normally separated from the number by a space (пропуск): 1995 г., 1995; 60 гг., the 1960's, etc. Less commonly, the space is omitted: 1955 г., 1955; 70 гг., the 1970's; etc.

A date may also be written out using only numerals and no words. As in English, this practice is very common in letters and other official documents. However, significant differences exist between Russian and English:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Russian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9.XI.94</td>
<td>XI/9/94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. II. 94</td>
<td>2/9/94</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As the above examples illustrate, Russian normally uses periods rather than slashes to separate the parts of a date written entirely in numerals. Also, in Russian, the figure for the day precedes the figure that denotes the month. This difference reflects the spoken idiom: a Russian would normally say девятье ноябрь, or “ninth of November,” in contrast to the more usual English “November ninth.” In dates written out using digits, Russian normally writes the month using Roman numerals (though Arabic numerals are also possible), while the day and year can only be written using Arabic numerals. Notice also that when Russian dates are written entirely with numerals, there is no abbreviation г. or гг. after the year.
16.3. Symbols Used in Arithmetic

Russian uses the same symbols as English to write arithmetical equations, the one exception being the symbol for division.

a) In equations, the equal sign (знак равенства) is used exactly as in English: \(1 + 1 = 2\).

b) The plus sign (плюс) is used in arithmetical equations as the mark of addition (сложение): \(2 + 2 = 4\) (К двум прибавить два равняется четырём.)

c) The minus sign (минус), which resembles the dash (тире), is used as a mark of subtraction (вычитание) in arithmetic: \(4 - 2 = 2\) (Четыре минус два равняется двум or От четырёх отнять два равняется двум.)

d) To denote multiplication (умножение) either an \(X\) is used or a period (·) written halfway above the line: \(4 \times 2 = 8\) or \(4 \cdot 2 = 8\) (which can be pronounced in any of the following four ways: Четыре умноженное на два равняется восьмь, Четырежды два — восьмь, Четыре на два — восьмь or Четыре умножить на два равняется восьмь). In this function either \(\times\) or \(\cdot\) is known as the multiplication sign (знак умножения).

e) To denote division (деление) a symbol identical in form to the colon (двоеточие) is used: \(4 : 2 = 2\). This mark is known as the mark of division (знак деления). The division symbol familiar to Americans (÷) is not used in Russian.

f) The square brackets (квадратные скобки) are used to enclose part of an equation containing rounded brackets. This usage can be found in mathematics textbooks: \( [(a + b) \cdot 4 + (a - b)] : 2 \cdot 5 = x \) (pronounced: a плюс b помноженное на четыре плюс a минус b поделенное на два и умноженное на пять равняется x).

16.4. Symbols Used to Write Temperature

These symbols are identical to those used in English for the same purpose.

a) The plus sign (плюс) is used to indicate degrees above zero (градусы тепла, literally degrees of warmth): \(+20^\circ \Phi\) (двадцать градусов выше нуля по Фаренгейту), \(+12^\circ \Ц\) (двенадцать градусов выше нуля по Цельсию).

b) The minus sign (минус) is used to indicate degrees below zero (градусы мороза, literally degrees of frost): \(-20^\circ \Phi\) (двадцать градусов ниже нуля по Фаренгейту), \(-10^\circ \Ц\) (десять градусов ниже нуля по Цельсию).
16.5. The Colon Used in Clock Time

A colon is used to separate hour from minute just as in English: 1:30 (полдмвторого), 10:00 (десять часов), etc.

16.6. The Slash (вертикальная палочка или дробь)

The slash (also known in English as the virgule) has several uses with numbers in Russian.

16.6.1. Fractions

As in English, the slash is used to write fractions: 1/2 (одна вторая), 4/5 (четыре пятых), 1 3/4 (одна целая и три четвертых). In its mathematical function, the slash is commonly referred to as дробь, which also means fraction.

16.6.2. In the Meaning “per”

The slash may be used as an abbreviation for the word “per,” in Russian в, на, or за: 10 м/сек (десять метров в секунду), 110 км/час (сто десять километров в час), 50 км/кв.м (пятьдесят килограмм на квадратный метр).

Note: Remember that the slash used in writing dates in English (V/10/87) corresponds to a period in Russian (10.V.87).

Exercise 16.1

Rewrite each of the following English numerical notations using symbols appropriate for a Russian text. (You need not write out the Russian words, though they are provided for your reference in the answer key to this exercise.)

1. 5.6 (five point six; five and six tenths)
2. 12,500 (twelve thousand five hundred)
3. XII/25/93 (December 25, 1993)
4. III/02/67 (March 2, 1967)
5. 2 + 2 = 4
6. 3 – 1 = 2
7. 4 × 4 = 16
8. 16 ÷ 4 = 4
9. 1/2 (one half)
10. 12.3 (twelve point three; twelve and three tenths)
11. 5 meters per second
12. +10°C (plus ten degrees Celsius, ten degrees Celsius above zero)
13. –24°F (minus twenty-four degrees Fahrenheit, twenty-four degrees Fahrenheit below zero)
14. 15,500.5 (fifteen thousand, five hundred and five tenths)
15. 50 kilometers per hour
16. 10:30 (ten thirty)
Chapter 17
Symbols Used to Format Texts

This section contains information that will be of practical use to you only if you need to prepare a typewritten manuscript in Russian. Nevertheless, we have included this section to round out your awareness of the use of non-punctuation symbols in Russian.

17.1. The Capital Letter Used in Formatting Poetic Texts

Capital letters are used at the beginning of certain types of phrases that are not sentences. These capitals are not a mark of punctuation, and the lines they begin do not require an end mark of punctuation. There are several types of contexts that require non-sentences to begin with a capital letter.

17.1.1. Lines of Verse

Each new line of verse in a poem—whether or not it constitutes a new sentence—normally begins with a capital letter. A famous poem written in the 19th century by the young poet M. Yu. Lermontov while en route to exile in the Caucasus serves as a good example of this convention:

Проща́й, немы́тая Росси́я,  
Странá рабо́в, странá госпо́д,  
И вы́, мунди́ры голуб́ые,  
И ты́, им прédанный нарóд.  

Farewell, unwashed Russia,  
Land of slaves, land of lords,  
And you, blue uniforms,  
And you, submissive hordes.

Быть може́т, за сте́ною Кавка́за  
Сокро́юсь от тво́их паше́й,  
От их всевидяще́го глáза,  
От их всеслы́шащих ушéй.  

Perhaps beyond Caucasian peaks  
I'll hide from your tsars,  
From their all-seeing gaze  
And ever-hearing ears.

As can be seen in the above translation, English also normally uses the capital letter to begin each new line of verse.

17.1.2. Stage Directions

As noted in Chapter 12, stage directions begin with a capital letter regardless of whether they constitute actual sentences. Recall also that stage directions are enclosed in parentheses, with no period after the sentence that precedes them (the period being placed instead outside the closing parenthesis). The sentence below contains an example of this usage:
1. «Мы должны сдeлать всe, чтобы окружающая среда была чистой, чтобы окружающий нас мир не был опасен для здоровья наших детей» (Аплодисменты).
“We should do everything to insure a clean environment so the world around us would be safe for our children's health.” (Applause.)

The same style of formatting is observed when information regarding origin or authorship is added at the end of a sentence:

2. Горбатого могила исправит (Пословица).
Only the grave will cure the hunchback. (Proverb.)

3. Земля — место тéсное (М. Гóрский).
It's a small world. (M. Gorky.)

As can be seen from the translations above, English, in contrast to Russian, requires that an end mark of punctuation be placed at the end of the sentence preceding the material in parentheses; also, the period comes inside, not after, the closing parenthesis.

Note 1: The current Russian convention is rather new. In books written even a few decades ago, it is possible to find the same type of formatting as that still used in modern English:

1. Горбатого могила исправит. (Пословица.)
Only the grave will cure the hunchback. (Proverb.)

2. Земля — место тeсное. (М. Гóрский.)
It's a small world. (M. Gorky.)

Note 2: If a larger passage is quoted or is used as an example, it is indented and the citation of the author follows beneath it without parentheses. In such cases, the end punctuation stands at the end of the quote and not after the author's name:

3. Белeет парус одинóкий
В тумáне мóря голубóм.  A lonely sail gleams white

M. Ю. Лéрмонтов In the blue mist of the sea.  M. Yu. Lermontov

This convention is identical in English and Russian.

17.1.3. Quoted Material in an Ongoing Sentence

A quoted sentence that stands within another sentence must begin with a capital letter. Here are two examples:

1. В инструкции чётко сказано: «Все электрические приборы должны раз в месяц проверяться электриком на предмет исправности».
The instructions clearly state, “All electric devices must be checked for wear once a month by an electrician.”
2. Петров ответил: «Тут нужно подумать».
Petrov answered: “At this point we need to think about it.”

Note: As discussed in Chapter 14, a colon introduces direct speech and other quoted matter that appears in an ongoing sentence.

17.1.4. Titles and Headings

The titles of books, articles, etc., as well as chapter and section headings within a text, normally begin with a capital letter regardless of whether they constitute full sentences. Titles and headings are also not followed by a period, though they may be followed by a question mark or another end mark of punctuation, as in the title of Chernyshevsky’s famous 19th century novel «Что делать?», What is to be done? Here are more examples of titles from Russian literature:

1. «Вишневый сад»
The Cherry Orchard

2. «Слово о полку Игореве»
The Lay of Igor’s Campaign

3. «Герой нашего времени»
A Hero of Our Time

This convention is the same in Russian and English. Unlike Russian, however, English normally capitalizes all of the nouns, verbs and other content words in the title. This practice is not observed in Russian, where only the first word is capitalized (as well as any proper nouns that happen to be in the title).

Note: If a title represents a choice between two titles joined by the word или, or, then the first word of each title is capitalized, as in the title of the well-known Soviet comedy film given below:

«Ирония судьбы, или С лёгким паром»
“The Irony of Fate, or Enjoy your Steambath”

Notice that in such titles, the adversative conjunction или, or, is preceded by a comma.

17.2. Punctuating and Formatting Letters

The rules for formatting personal and business letters in Russian are similar to English. There are, however, a few notable differences, some of which were discussed in previous chapters.

17.2.1. Formatting the Date at the Top

In a letter, the Russian date is written with numerals or with a combination of numerals and words, with the day indicated first, the month second (in either
17.2.2. The Salutation Followed by an Exclamation Point

Recall from our discussion of the exclamation point in Chapter 6 that the introductory vocative in a Russian letter is followed by an exclamation point. (English normally places a comma after the initial salutation in an informal letter, a colon in a formal letter). Russian employs the exclamation point in all styles, rather than a comma or a colon, as in English (though a comma, or less often a colon, may replace the exclamation point in formal letters). In any case, the difference in style is clearly signaled by the choice of adjective preceding the vocative. The vocative in an informal letter is usually preceded by a form of the word дорогой, dear, while formal letters require the word уважаемый, respected, or глубокоуважаемый, deeply respected. Here are some examples:

1. Дорогой Серёжа! (informal)
   Dear Seryozha,

2. Уважаемый Константин Сергеевич! (formal)
   or Уважаемый Константин Сергеевич,
   Dear Konstantin Sergeevich:

3. Глубокоуважаемый господин Джойс! (formal)
   or Глубокоуважаемый господин Джойс,
   Dear Mr. Joyce:

17.2.3. Spelling of the Formal “You”

Russians often use the plural “you” to address a single individual. In a letter, forms of the plural “you” are capitalized regardless of whether or not they begin a sentence. Thus, a Russian letter might contain sentences such as the following:

1. Благодарю Вас за внимание.
   Thank you (one person, formal) for your attention.

2. Я получил Ваше письмо сегодня.
   I received your (one person, formal) letter today.

3. Высылаём Вам следующее:
   We are sending you the following:

   Forms such as вы, ваш, вам, etc., which refer to a group of people, are not capitalized unless they begin a sentence, nor are forms of the familiar you (ты, твой, тебе, etc.).
17.2.4. Punctuation of the Farewell Salutation

Russians end their letters with a variety of farewell formulas. Formal letters often end with the words С уважением, With respect. However, in Russian the farewell salutation is not followed by a comma as it is in English. Informal farewells include: Пишите, Write; Обнимаю, I hug you; Целую, I kiss you. These are not followed by a comma, but may be followed by an exclamation point.

17.3. The Period Used as a Formatting Device

In addition to its uses as a mark of punctuation and of spelling, the Russian period has several important functions as a device used in formatting texts.

a) The period normally follows a number in a list of items. This is also the case in English. Here is an example:

A. Знаки в конце предложения
1. Точка
2. Вопросительный знак
3. Восклицательный знак
4. Многоточие

A. End Punctuation
1. The period
2. The question mark
3. The exclamation point
4. The points of omission

Note, however, that there are no periods after chapter or section titles and headings in either Russian or English.

b) The period is used after headings that are part of the same paragraph as the text following. This contrasts with the practice of not writing a period after titles and headings that are set above the regular text. Notice that headings are often distinguished from the following text by a different script, perhaps by boldface type, small capitals, or italics. Such conventions are also common in English. Below is an example taken from a physics textbook:

Глава XI
АТОМНАЯ ФИЗИКА
§119. СТРОЕНИЕ АТОМА. ОПЫТЫ РЕЗЕРФОРДА
Опыты Резерфорда. Масса электронов в несколько тысяч раз меньше массы атомов. Так как атом...

Chapter XI
ATOMIC PHYSICS

119. THE STRUCTURE OF THE ATOM. RUTHERFORD'S EXPERIMENTS

Rutherford's experiments. The mass of electrons is several thousand times less than the mass of atoms. Since the atom...
Several things are noteworthy in this example. First, notice the use of different sizes and styles of type to distinguish a broader heading, such as a chapter title, from a smaller one, such as the section heading. Second, notice the symbol used for the section heading. This section symbol (§), which Russians call the папа́раф (not to be confused with the Russian word for "paragraph," which is абза́ц), is used to introduce each new section of a Russian text. Third, notice that if a title or heading consists of more than one phrase, a period is used at the end of all but the last phrase:

§119. СТРОЕНИЕ АТОМА. ОПЫТЫ РЕЗЕРФОРДА
Section 119. THE STRUCTURE OF THE ATOM. RUTHERFORD’S EXPERIMENTS

Fourth, notice the hanging indent. Russian, like English, uses indenting (сделать абзац, сделать красную строку/строку) to begin a new paragraph (а абзац). Some specialists on Russian punctuation consider indentation to be a form of punctuation.

17.4. A Few Final Bookish Details

In conclusion, we wish to direct your attention to a few interesting differences between Russian and English in the formatting of books.

a) On the final page of most Russian books you will find the word тираж with a number after it. This denotes the number of copies printed. Most books printed in English do not furnish this information.

b) Both Russian and English books normally give the names of individuals who have contributed to their writing and editing. Sometimes, in a Russian book you will notice that a name is enclosed with a box:

В. Т. Иванова

This indicates that the individual in question passed away before the book was published. The box around the name is called тра́урные ра́мки, a term roughly translatable as “mourning frame.”

c) Finally, we ask you to compare any Russian book with a book printed in English. You will notice that the words printed vertically on the spine (корешок) of the Russian book begin at the bottom and read upward. On the English book, however, the words begin at the top of the spine and read downward. When it comes to the difference between Russian and English styles of formatting and punctuation, then, it would seem that you really can judge a book by its cover.
Exercise 17.1

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the Russian name of this symbol ($)?
2. What does the number after the word тираж signify?
3. What is this box called and what does it signify: ________?
4. How do vertical words on the spine of a Russian book read?
5. What mark of punctuation is normally used after the salutation at the beginning of a Russian letter?
6. What mark of punctuation is normally used after the phrase С уважением, With respect, at the end of a letter?
7. When are forms of вы, you, capitalized in a Russian letter?
8. Rewrite these dates in the Russian style using only numerals:
   August 5, 1985       November 21, 1965
9. Copy these lines of poetry, adding capital letters where necessary:
   белеет парус одинокий
   в тумане моря голубом.

   A lonely sail gleams white
   In the blue haze of the sea.
10. Rewrite the following phrases and sentences, capitalizing where necessary and using the proper punctuation:
    a. вот и всё аплодисменты
       And that’s all. (Applause.)
    b. первый блин комом пословица
       If at first you don’t succeed, try, try again. (Proverb.)
    c. быть или не быть— вот вопрос шекспир
       To be, or not to be, that is the question. (Shakespeare.)
    d. старик говорит не знаю
       The old man says, “I don’t know.”
    e. не знаю говорит старик
       “I don’t know,” says the old man.
    f. ирония судьбы или с лёгким паром
       “The Irony of Fate, or Have a Good Steambath”
Keys to the Exercises (Ключи)

Part One. Syntax

Exercise 1.1

Tell whether the italicized subject in each sentence conveys the topic (the old information) or the comment (the new information).

1. Эту книгу взял наш профессор. (comment)
   Our professor was the one who took that book.

2. Маша ходила в магазин сегодня. (topic)
   Masha went to the store today.

3. Пошла Маша. (comment)
   Masha was the one who went, or It was Masha who went.

4. Дети уже спят. (topic)
   The children are already sleeping.

5. Это сделал твой сын. (comment)
   It was your son who did it, or Your son was the one who did it.

6. Студенты поехали на пикник. (topic)
   The students went to a picnic.

7. Каникулы больше всего любят студенты. (comment)
   Students are the ones who love the school break most of all.

8. Студенты любят больше всего отдыхать. (topic)
   What students like best is resting.

9. В доме жила пожилая женщина. (comment)
   In the house there lived an elderly woman.

10. Пожилая женщина жила на пенсии. (topic)
    The elderly woman lived on a pension.

Exercise 2.1

Identify the italicized item as: predicate nominal, adverbial modifier, object complement, coordinated attribute, non-coordinated attribute, or appositive. Tell if it extends the subject or predicate.
1. **В лесу вёсели пёли птицы.**
   (adverbial modifier, predicate)
   *Birds sang cheerfully in the forest.*

2. **Огромные, лиловые тучи...**
   (coordinated attribute, subject)
   *Enormous violet clouds...*

3. **...борщ со сметаной.**
   (non-coordinated attribute, predicate)
   *...borsch with sour cream.*

4. **...игрок устало шёл к выходу.**
   (adverbial modifier, predicate)
   *The defeated players walked wearily toward the exit.*

5. **По Москве реке шёл небольшой теплоход.**
   (appositive, predicate)
   *A small vessel travelled down the Moscow River.*

6. **Мой отец был директором школы.**
   (predicate nominal, predicate)
   *My father was the school principal.*

7. **Царевич Дмитрий был убит в Угличе.**
   (appositive, subject)
   *The Tsarevich Dmitry was killed in Uglich.*

8. **Пётя опять потерял свои варежки.**
   (object complement, predicate)
   *Petya lost his mittens again.*

9. **...произошла серьезная авария.**
   (coordinated attribute, subject)
   *A serious accident occurred...*

10. **Второй человек был отдан в кожаное пальто.**
    (coordinated attribute, subject)
    *The second person was dressed in a leather coat.*

**Exercise 2.2**

Identify the italicized item as: predicate nominal, adverbial modifier, object complement, coordinated attribute, non-coordinated attribute, or appositive. Tell if it extends the subject or predicate.

1. **Маша, передай соль.**
   (direct address)
   *Masha, pass the salt.*

2. **Рыцарь, гордый и непобедимый, поскакал вперёд.**
   (detached attribute)
   *The knight, proud and invincible, galloped...*

3. **Ой, как жарко!**
   (interjection)
   *Oh, how hot it is!*

4. **Кста́ти, у вас очень хоро́ший русский язы́к.**
   (parenthetical word)
   *By the way, you have very good Russian.*

5. **Вы глубоко ошиба́етесь, Геннадий Петрович.**
   (direct address)
   *You are completely mistaken, Gennady Petrovich.*

6. **Отступи́в на́зад, он внимательно огля́делся.**
   (detached adv. mod.)
   *Stepping back, he looked around carefully.*

7. **Хочу посмотреть Москву, столицу Росси́и.**
   (detached appositive)
   *I want to see Moscow, the capital of Russia.*
8. Помимо своих научных достижений, он еще славится музыкальным талантом.
   In addition to his scholarly accomplishments, he is also renowned...
   (detached adverbial modifier)

9. А он, мятежный, просит бурь...
   But he, the rebellious one, asks for a storm...
   (detached attribute)

10. Вы, конечно, правы.
    You, of course, are right.
    (parenthetical word)

Exercise 3.1

For each sentence below, form a question that corresponds to the role played by the subordinate clause. Each subordinate clause is italicized and the conjunction or conjunctive word connecting it to the main clause is given in italics.

1. Того, что я прочитал в этой книге, надо долго запомнить мне.
   What I read in this book I remembered a long time.
   (Что надо долго запомнить мне? What did I long remember?)

2. Дети знают, кто придет сегодня.
   The children know who is coming today.
   (Что дети знают? What do the children know?)

3. Случилось то, чего мы никогда не могли ожидать.
   What happened we never could have expected.
   (Что случилось? What happened?)

4. Ясно, что каждый должен отвечать за свои поступки.
   It's clear (that) every person should answer for his actions.
   (Что ясно? What is clear?)

5. Всё, что минуту назад казалось важным, потеряло всякий интерес.
   Everything that seemed important a moment ago lost all interest.
   (Что потеряло всякий интерес? What lost all interest?)

6. Ей показалось, что он испугался чего-то.
   It seemed to her (that) he had become frightened of something.
   (Что ей показалось? What did it seem like to her?)

7. Я слышал, как кто-то вошёл в прихожую.
   I heard someone come into the anteroom.
   (Что я слышал? What did I hear?)

8. В письме сообщалось, что они скоро приедут.
   The letter said (that) they would soon come.
   (Что сообщалось в письме? What was said in the letter?)

9. Всем известно, что он сделал это.
    Everyone knows (that) he did it.
    (Что известно всем? What did everyone know?)
10. Нам показалось, что она была взволнована.
It seemed to us that she was agitated.
(Что нам показалось? What did it seem like to us?)

11. Наде чудилось, что вниз играют на скрипке.
Nadya imagined that someone was playing the violin downstairs.
(Что Надя чудилось? What did Nadya imagine?)

12. Долго было видно, как она стояла у края дороги (как = что).
For a long time she could be seen standing by the edge of the road.
(Что долгое было видно? What was visible for a long time?)

13. Удивительно, что он пришёл вовремя.
It was amazing that he came on time.
(Что удивительно? What is amazing?)

14. Незвестно, кто поедет на соревнования.
It is not known who will go to the competition.
(Что неведомо? What is not known?)

15. Всем понятно, что это займет много времени.
Everyone understands that this will take a lot of time.
(Что всем понятно? What does everyone understand?)

16. Мне неизвестно, как ему удалось заплатить за билет.
I don’t know how he managed to pay for the ticket.
(Что мне неизвестно? What don’t I know?)

17. Нет ничего, что могло бы отвлечь её от тяжелых мыслей.
There is nothing that could distract her from her heavy thoughts.
(Что могло отвлечь её? What could distract her?)

18. То, что случилось, не изменишь.
You can’t change what happened.
(Что не изменишь? What can’t you change?)

19. Любой, кто обращался к ней за помощью, получал её.
Anyone who came to her for help received it.
(Кто получал помощь от неё?) Who received help from her?

20. Тот, кто впервые приезжал..., был поражён красотой парка.
Whoever came... for the first time was struck by the park’s beauty.
(Кто был поражен красотой парка?)

Who was struck by the park’s beauty?

Exercise 4.1

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate coordinating conjunction: или (or), и (and); а (and yet, but), но, (but), но однako (but still), однako (however), однako же (but), всё же (and yet); да (a colloquial conjunction meaning и, and; or но, but).
1. Дорогу занесло сильным снегом, и мы заблудились.  
The road was quite covered with snow and we lost our way.

2. Степень, и стало холодно.  
It got dark and turned cold.

3. Дождь нет, но холодно. (but it's cold)  
Дождь нет, но всё же холодно. (and yet it's cold)  
Дождь нет, но однako холодно. (but still it's cold)  
Дождь нет, но однako все холодно. (but, all the same, it's still cold)  
There's no rain, but it's cold.

4. Воздух дышит весенным ароматом, и вся природа оживляется.  
The air exudes the aroma of spring and all nature comes alive.

5. Небо было пасмурно, но дождь уже не было.  
Небо было пасмурно, однako дождь уже не было.  
The sky was overcast but it was no longer raining.  
Небо было пасмурно, хотя дождь уже не было.  
The sky was overcast although it was no longer raining.

6. Это была её подруга, но (всё же) я её сразу не узнала.  
That was her friend, and yet I didn’t recognize her right away.

7. Ему было всё равно, али он не хотел показывать своего разочарования.  
He didn’t care or he didn’t want to show his disappointment.

8. Зверь ночью не подходил к зимовье, али ветер сравнял его следы на снегу.  
The animal didn’t come up to the cabin at night or the wind covered up its tracks in the snow.

9. Через час мы уже были дома, а моя сестра осталась на станции.  
In an hour we were home, but my sister was still at the station.

10. Он заговорил, и голос его показался мне знакомым.  
He began to speak and his voice seemed familiar to me.

11. Эта книга выдержала десятки изданий, но (однако, но всё же) интерес к ней не ослабевает.  
This book has gone through dozens of editions but (and yet, and still) interest in it is not waning.

12. Ёзредко слышались шаги, али вдруг кто-то стучал в окно.  
From time to time footsteps could be heard, suddenly someone would knock on the window.

13. Результаты опытов были ошеломляющими, али я просто не был готов к таким результатам.  
The results of the experiment were astounding or I simply wasn’t ready for such results.
14. Мóре ещё гремéло, но вéтер уже стихáл. 
Мóре ещё гремéло, однáко вéтер уже стихáл. 
The sea still roared but the wind was already dying down.

15. Пришлa веснa, и сад напóлнился щёбетáнием птиц. 
Spring arrived(,) and the garden filled with the chattering of birds.

Exercise 5.1

Identify the italicized words as one of the following: simple non-extended, simple extended, complex, compound, compound complex, elliptic, impersonal.

1. Мíша cказáл, что он идёт на концéрт. (complex) 
Misha said that he was going to the concert.

2. Мíша спраóшивает, и я отвeчаю. (compound) 
Misha asks and I answer.

3. — Каких живóтных ты вóдил в зоопáрке? (simple extended) 
— Жиrафа и львa. (elliptic) 
What animals did you see at the zoo? A giraffe and a lion.

4. Дéти любят катáться на сáнках. (simple extended) 
Kids love to go sledding.

5. Родитêли хотят, чтóбы их дéти хорошо учíлись. (complex) 
Parents want their kids to study well.

6. Я увéрен, что ты честнá, и ты тáкже увéрена, что я чéстен. (compound complex) 
I am sure that you are honest and you are sure that I am honest.

7. На деревêх сидéли большóе, чёрные птицы. (simple extended) 
Big black birds sat in the trees.

8. Охóтник подошёл ближе, и олéнь убежáл. (compound) 
The hunter came closer and the deer ran away.

9. Дождь перестáл. (simple non-extended) 
The rain stopped.

10. Здесь скúчно. (impersonal) 
It’s boring here.

11. Илí я ошибся, илí он престóпник. (compound) 
Either I am mistaken or he’s the criminal.

Part Two. Punctuation

Exercise 6.1

Add the proper beginning and end punctuation to each sentence.
1. Осенью перелётные птицы улетают на юг.
In the fall, migratory birds fly south.

2. За время перелётов и на зимовках гибнет много птиц.
Many birds die during migrations and in their wintering grounds.

3. Сколько раз я просила тебя не шуметь?!
How many times have I told you not to make noise?!

4. Когда он вернулся из командировки?
When did he return from his trip?

5. — Ты не знаешь его адрес?
— Нет, не знаю.
Do you know his address?
No, I don’t.

“I don’t know,” answered the student.

7. «Откуда вы?» — спросил незнакомец.
“Where are you from?” asked the stranger.

8. Зачем вы ездили туда именно сегодня?
Why did you go there today of all days?

9. Ты не знаешь, какого числа он уехал?
Do you know what date he left?

10. Он спрашивал меня, какого числа он вернулся из поезда.
He asked me when I had returned from the trip.

11. Как я рад тебя видеть! Где ты так долго пропадал?
How glad I am to see you! Where were you hiding so long?

12. Да, дни летят… Жизнь проходит…
Yes, the days fly by… life passes…

13. Мы спросили, как добраться до метро.
We asked how to get to the subway.

14. Ты знаком с этим художником?
Are you acquainted with this artist?

15. Она спросила меня, знакома ли я с этим художником.
She asked me if I was acquainted with this artist.

16. А где сейчас ваш брат? Он в Калифорнии?
And where’s your brother now? Is he in California?

17. Они спрашивали меня, где сейчас мой брат.
They asked me where my brother is now.

18. Как жарко! Я, пожалуй, сниму плащ.
How hot it is! I think I’ll take off my raincoat.
19. Санкт-Петербург называемые Северной Венецией.
    St. Petersburg is called the Northern Venice.

20. Оста́вь меня́ в покое́! Я не хочу́ слы́шать ниче́го об э́том!
    Leave me alone! I don’t want to hear anything about it.

21. Я попроси́л её оста́вить меня́ в покое́.
    I asked her to leave me in peace.

22. Не зна́ю, что и думать об э́том. Може́т, сходи́ть... А, може́т...
    I don’t know what to make of it. Maybe I should go... but maybe...

23. Уважа́емая Нина Петро́вна!
    Dear Nina Petrovna:

24. Посмотри́, посмотря́! (or Посмотри́! Посмотря́!) Какие огро́мные бё́лые чайки! Никогда́ не ви́дела таки́х огро́мных!
    Look! Look! What enormous white seagulls! I’ve never seen such big ones before!

25. — Ты уже́ зако́нчишь университет?  
    — Нет ещё́.
    Have you already finished the university? Not yet.

26. Я не знал, зако́нчишь ли он университет.
    I didn’t know if he finished the university.

27. «Ко́торый час?» — спроси́л он.
    He asked, “What time is it?”


29. «Так, э́то было...» — думал Андре́й про себя́.
    “Okay, that was...” thought Andrei to himself.

30. Я не пони́маю, зачём он ушёл. Не пони́маю... Не пони́маю...
    I don’t understand why he left. I don’t understand... I don’t understand...

Exercise 7.1

Add commas where necessary in the blanks below. Beginning and end punctuation have been provided. Remember that the Russian punctuation will often differ from that of the English translations.

1. Иди́ сюда́, Танечка.
   Come here, Tanechka.

2. Меж́ду нами́ секре́тов нет.
   There are no secrets between us.

3. Меж́ду нами, он не тот, за ко́го себя́ выдаёт.
   Just between us, he is not the person he makes himself out to be.
4. По-моему, вы глубоко ошибаешься.
   In my opinion, you are completely mistaken.

5. Это, конечно, правда.
   That’s of course true.

6. Николаева Галина Андреевна
   Nikolaeva, Galina Andreevna

7. 12-го апреля 1860 г. в США началась гражданская война.
   On April 12, 1860, the US Civil War began.

8. С другой стороны, это совершенно логично.
   On the other hand, that’s completely logical.

9. С другой стороны луга начали пшеничные поля.
   Wheat fields began on the other side of the meadow.

10. Вчера я получила важную телеграмму.
    Yesterday, I received an important telegram.

11. В этом доме гости были особено в почете.
    In that house, guests were especially honored.

12. К сожалению, нам не удалось приехать вовремя.
    Unfortunately, we failed to arrive on time.

13. К счастью, нас не увидели в высокой траве.
    Fortunately, no one saw us in the tall grass.

14. Ой, как страшно!
    Oh, how horrible!

15. 197110 г. Са́нкт-Петербу́рг
    Невский пр., 25, кв. 32
    Нешину Оле́гу Ива́новичу
    197110 St. Petersburg
    Nevsky Avenue 25, apt. 32
    to Neshin, Oleg Ivanovich

Exercise 7.2

Add commas where needed to the sentences below. The Russian punctuation will often differ from that provided in the English translations.

1. Здесь, словно в сказке, каждая тропа ведет к роднику.
   Here, just like in a fairy tale, every path leads to a spring.

2. Пушкин известен всему миру как великий поэт.
   Pushkin is known the world over

3. Благодаря массе новых впечатлений, день прошёл незаметно.
   Thanks to the great number of new impressions, the day passed without our noticing.

4. Несмотря на праздничный день, в саду было пустынно.
   In spite of the holiday, the garden was deserted.
5. Вопреки мнению моего брата, гость мне понравился.
Contrary to my brother’s opinion, I liked the guest.

6. Слева, под горой, стоял небольшой деревянный дом.
At the bottom of the hill on the left stood a small wooden house.

7. Дети, вернувшиеся домой, с шумом ворвались в прихожую.
The children returning home burst noisily into the hall.

8. Впереди нас, за срубленным лесом, открывалась довольно большая поляна.
Before us, behind a logged forest, lay a rather large meadow.

9. Вдруг на повороте реки, под тёмным лесом, мелькнул огонёк.
Suddenly, at a bend in the river under the dark forest, a light flashed.

10. Здесь, в этих пустынных степях, люди заново строили свою жизнь.
Here in these desert steppes, people were rebuilding their lives.

11. Яркое солнце, играя, блестело на талом снегу.
The bright sun gleamed playfully on the melting snow.

12. Приехав в город, он срочно отправился навестить свою тётку.
Upon arriving in the city, he immediately set off to visit his aunt.

13. Я шёл пешком и поминутно останавливался, поражённый прелестью природы.
I walked along and stopped every minute, struck by nature’s charm.

14. В последний раз оглянувшись, она помахала мне рукой.
Taking one last look, she waved to me.

15. Обойдя городок полем, я пришёл к реке.
Avoiding the town by going through the field, I came to a river.

16. Измученные и мокрые, мы достигли берега.
Exhausted and wet, we reached the shore.

17. Я долго любовался его лицом, кротким и ясным, как весеннее небо.
A long time I admired his face, meek and clear as the spring sky.

18. Месяц, полный и красный, начал показываться из-за домов.
The moon, full and red, began to show from behind the houses.

19. Сверх всякой ожидания, дед подарил мне несколько книг.
Beyond all expectation, granddad gave me several books.

20. Весь день дождь лил, как из ведра.
All day it rained cats and dogs.

21. Лариса хочет преподавать русский язык как иностранный.
Larisa wants to teach Russian as a foreign language.

22. Затаив дыхание, дети слушали рассказ Мишина отца, известного геоблога.
Holding their breath the children listened to the story told by Misha's father, a famous geologist.

23. Второй сын, кругленький и румяный, был похож лицом на мать.
The second son, plump and rosy-cheeked, resembled his mother in the face.

24. Сегодня она, в новом синем платье, была особенно красива.
Today, in a new blue dress, she was especially beautiful.

25. Справа, у подножия скопок, расстилалось большое поле.
To the right, at the foot of the mountains, lay a large field.

26. Кроме моей сестры в комнате находились две незнакомые девушки.
Besides my sister, there were two unfamiliar girls in the room.

27. Утомлённый долгой речью, я закрыл глаза.
Fatigued by the long speech, I closed my eyes.

28. Он ворвался в комнату как стрела и тут же упал как подкошенный.
He burst into the room like an arrow and collapsed as if struck down.

29. Около дома сидел старик, худой, с тощей бородкой, и курил трубку.
Near the house sat an old man, thin, and with a scraggily little beard, who was smoking a pipe.

30. Измученный бессонными ночами, он мгновенно заснул.
Exhausted by sleepless nights, he immediately fell asleep.

Exercise 7.3

The sentences below contain explanatory clauses. Rewrite each sentence, adding the necessary commas.

1. Не знаю, будет ли дождь завтра.
   I don't know whether it will rain tomorrow.

2. Я знаю, что завтра будет дождь.
   I know (that) it will rain tomorrow.

3. Объясните мне, почему вы так думаете.
   Explain to me why you think so.

4. Петь забыл, где он оставил сумку.
   Petya forgot where he had left the bag.

5. Сын прекрасно понимал, что нужно от него родителям.
   The son understood perfectly well what his parents needed from him.

6. Они понимают, что нам здесь трудно.
   They understand that it's hard for us here.

7. Валя так и не сказала папе, куда брат пошёл.
   Valya wound up not telling her dad where her brother went.
Exercise 7.4

The sentences below contain explanatory clauses. Rewrite each sentence, adding the necessary commas.

1. Дом, который мы купили, очень нравится детям.
   The kids very much like the house (that) we bought.

2. Незнакомый человечек, которого я встретил на вокзале, помог мне донести чемоданы.
   A stranger (who) I met at the station helped carry my suitcases.

3. В этом магазине продаются вещи, которые вас интересуют.
   This store sells the things that interest you.

4. Неизвестно, кто выиграет приз.
   It's unknown who will win the prize.

5. То, что ты принёс, очень пригодится нам.
   The thing you brought will be very useful to us.

6. Санкт-Петербург, который в народе называют «Питер», богат историей.
   St. Petersburg, which people call “Piter,” is rich in history.

7. Было слышно, как какие-то люди разговаривали во дворе.
   Some people could be heard talking in the courtyard. (Literally, It could be heard how...)

8. Не знаю кто придет сегодня.
   I don’t know who will come today.
9. Девушка со слезами попрощалась с деревней, где прожила всю жизнь.
   The girl said a tearful farewell to the village where she had lived her whole life.

10. Цветы, которые давно не поливали, совсем засохли.
    The flowers that weren’t watered for a long time withered completely.

Exercise 7.5

Each sentence below contains a subordinate clause that modifies a predicate nominal (italicized) in the main clause. Rewrite each sentence, adding the necessary commas.

1. Её ребёнок — неё всё, чем она живёт.
   Her child is her whole reason for living. (Literally, all, by which she lives)

2. Вы том, кого я давно жду.
   You are the one (whom) I’ve been waiting for so long.

3. Он таков, как мы и предполагали.
   He’s just like we supposed. (literally, the kind like we supposed)

4. Кинокамера — это том, что я давно хотел приобрести.
   A movie camera is what I’ve wanted to acquire for a long time.

5. Несмотря на что, он сегодня том же, что и вчера.
   Despite everything, he’s the same person today as yesterday.

6. Теперь Виктор не том, что был в прошлые годы.
   Now Victor is not the man (that) he was in former years.

7. Это всё, чего мог добиться инженер.
   That’s everything (that) an engineer can achieve.

8. Это как раз том, что я так долго искал.
   This is precisely what I have been searching for so long.

9. Она всё такая же, как была пять лет назад.
   She’s still the same as she was five years ago.

10. Результат опыта был таковой же, как в прошлый раз.
    The result of the experiment was the same as last time.

11. Герой — это том, кто творит жизнь вопреки смерти.
    A hero is someone who creates life in the face of death.

12. Вечер был именно таковой, как обещало утро.
    The evening was precisely like the morning had promised.

13. Это было всё, в чём мы тогда нуждались.
    That was everything (that) we needed.

14. Мороз таков, что трудно дышать.
    The frost takes one’s breath away. (Literally, The frost is such that it’s hard to breathe)
15. Вера не такова, чтобы отказаться от принятого решения.
Vera is not the type to back away from what she's decided to do.

Exercise 7.6

The sentences below contain dependent clauses of time. Rewrite each sentence, adding the necessary commas.

1. Они жили в Омске, до того как переехали в Новгород.
   They lived in Omsk before moving to Novgorod.
2. Как только я услышал шум, я сразу прибежал сюда.
   As soon as I heard the noise, I immediately came running.
3. Я вам сообщу, когда узнаю об этом.
   I'll tell you when I find out myself.
4. Пока мы спали, папа положил все подарки под ёлку.
   While we slept, Papa put all of the gifts under the tree.
5. Нужно знать синтаксис, прежде чем учить пунктуацию.
   You need to know syntax before studying punctuation.
6. Летом, когда все другие дети отдыхали, Коля занимался арифметикой.
   In the summer, when all the other kids were on vacation, Kolya studied arithmetic.
7. Они стояли под деревом, пока не кончился дождь.
   They stood under a tree until the rain ended.
8. Нужно думать, прежде чем действовать.
   You need to think before you act.
9. Всё было уже распределено, когда мы приехали.
   Everything had already been sold by the time we got there.
10. Он оставался в постели, до тех пор пока ему врач не разрешил вставать. (neutral statement)
    Он оставался в постели до тех пор, пока ему врач не разрешил вставать. (special emphasis on "until")
    He stayed in bed until the doctors allowed him to get up.

Exercise 7.7

Add commas where needed to the sentences below. In sentences containing dependent clauses of purpose, be sure to read the English translation to determine the intended topic/comment structure before deciding where to place the comma.

1. Я сегодня весь день свободен, потому что сделал всё вчера.
   I'm free all day today because I did everything yesterday.
2. Он вышел оттуда, откуда вышла группа девушек.
   He came out from (the place) where a group of girls came out from.

3. Когда у меня в руках новая книга, я чувствую нетерпение прочитать её.
   When I have a new book in my hands(,) I feel impatience to read it.

4. Библиотека была закрыта, потому что было воскресенье.
   The library was closed because it was Sunday.

5. Библиотека была закрыта потому, что было воскресенье.
   The reason the library was closed was because it was Sunday.

6. Ввиду того что погода ухудшилась, поездка не состоялась.
   Because the weather turned bad(,) the trip didn’t take place.

7. Я смотрел ей вслед, пока она не затерялась среди толпы.
   I watched her until she disappeared in the crowd.

8. Трава была необычайно сочной, благодаря тому что часто шли дожди.
   The grass was unusually lush thanks to the frequent rains.
   (special emphasis on the reason)
   It was thanks to the frequent rains that the grass was unusually lush.

9. В то время как зима в южном полушарии, в северном полушарии лето.
   When it’s winter in the Southern Hemisphere(,) it’s summer in the Northern Hemisphere.

10. Солнце уже встало над лесом, когда я вышел к реке.
    The sun had already risen over the forest when I came to the river.

11. В силу того что водород легче воздуха, шар с водородом быстро поднимается на значительную высоту.
    Because hydrogen is lighter than air(,) a balloon filled with hydrogen quickly rises to a significant altitude.

12. Как только начался заниматься заря, путешественники продолжили путь.
    As soon as dawn began(,) the travelers resumed their journey.

13. По мере того как работа приближалась к концу, я всё больше увлекался ею.
    As the work approached an end(,) I became even more engrossed in it.

14. После лекции, когда было уже два часа, я отправился домой.
    After the lecture(,) when it was already two(,) I set out for home.
15. Она выполнила свою работу в срок, благодаря тому что сумела хорошо организовать своё время.
She got her work done on time thanks to the fact that she was able to organize her time well.
Она выполнила свою работу в срок благодаря тому, что сумела хорошо организовать своё время.
The reason she got her work done on time was because she succeeded in organizing her time well.

16. Он быстро уснул, потому что за день очень устал.
He quickly fell asleep because the day had really tired him out.
Он быстро уснул потому, что очень устал за день.
The reason he quickly fell asleep was because the day had really tired him out.

17. Теперь, когда он закончил картину, нам разрешили посмотреть её.
Now, when he finished the picture, we were allowed to look at it.

18. Где нет любви к искусству, там нет и критики.
Where there is no love for art there is no criticism of it either.

19. Мы отдыхали в деревне, пока не кончились каникулы.
We rested in the country until our vacation ended.

20. Река обмелела, потому что лето было засушливое.
The river got shallow because the summer was dry.
Река обмелела потому, что лето было засушливое.
The reason the river got shallow was because the summer was dry.

Exercise 7.8
Rewrite these sentences, adding commas where needed to set off the subordinate clauses.

1. Я сделал всё так, как ты посоветовал мне.
I did everything (just) the way you advised me to.

2. Всё произошло совсем не так, как я предполагал.
Everything happened not at all the way I had anticipated.

3. Состояние его дочери сегодня лучше, чем вчера.
His daughter's condition is better today than it was yesterday.

4. Чем больше я узнаю его, тем больше он мне нравится.
The better I get to know him the more I like him.

5. Они пели так тихо, что на улице ничего не было слышно.
They sang so quietly that nothing could be heard outside.

6. Я старался говорить так, чтобы никто не заметил моего волнения.
I tried to talk in such a way that no one would notice my agitation.
7. Он занимался много, чтобы не отстать от своих братьев.
He studied a lot so as not to fall behind his brothers.

8. Чем раньше ты меня разбудишь, тем лучше.
The sooner you wake me the better.

9. Было очень темно, так что в двух шагах ничего не было видно.
It was very dark and so nothing was visible even two paces away.

10. Было так темно, что в двух шагах ничего не было видно.
It was so dark that nothing was visible even two paces away.

11. Раз свет горит, они дома.
If the lights are on, they're home.

12. Несмотря на то что мороз сильный, дети легко одеты.
Despite the fact that it is bitterly cold, the kids are lightly dressed.

13. Если буду завтра в книжном магазине, я куплю эту книгу.
If I'm in the bookstore today, I'll buy that book.

14. Если будешь в наших краях, заходи в гости.
Drop by if you're in the area. (literally, in our regions)

15. Как ни интересна была книга, мне пришлось отложить её.
In spite of how interesting the book was, I had to set it aside.

16. Хотя было уже темно, мы не зажигали свет.
Although it was already dark, we didn't turn on the light.

17. Несмотря на то, что вода в море была прохладная, мы решили искупаться.
Even though the seawater was chilly we decided to go for a swim.

18. Чего бы мне это ни стоило, я должен закончить дело в срок.
No matter what it takes, I should finish the work on time.

19. Если ты ему поможешь, он тебе будет очень благодарен.
If you help him, he'll be very grateful.

20. Раз он пообещал, то выполнит.
If he promised, then he'll do it.

Exercise 8.1

Rewrite the sentences below, adding commas where necessary. Pay attention to the italicized phrases, which contain parallel sentence elements.

1. Весной поле вспахали и засеяли.
   In the spring, the field was plowed and seeded.

2. Дай мне какую-нибудь книгу, журнал или газету.
   Give me a book, magazine, or newspaper.
3. Её пугали морозы и вьюги, тайга и непроходимые болота.
She was frightened by the freezing weather and snowstorms, by the taiga and impenetrable swamps.

4. Большие рыжая собака неслась нам навстречу.
A big reddish dog raced toward us.

5. Я поеду теперь на Дальний Восток либо на север.
Now I'll go to the Far East or to the north.

6. Степь, или безлесая равнина, сейчас нам не казалась вымершей.
The steppe, or treeless plain, no longer seemed lifeless to us now.

7. Кругом виднелись встревоженные, растерянные лица.
All around could be seen alarmed and confused faces.

8. Над каналами висели черные железные мосты.
Над каналами висели чёрные, железные мосты. (emphatic)
Above the canals hung black iron bridges.

9. День был жаркий, светлый, лучезарный.
The day was hot, light and radiant.

10. Большая железная печка стояла посреди палаты.
A big iron stove stood in the middle of the ward.

11. Сходи купи хлеба и булочек.
Go buy some bread and buns.

12. Шёл длинный товарный поезд.
A long freight train was travelling along.

13. Машина остановилась около низкого кирпичного дома.
The car stopped near a squat brick house.

14. Длинный узкий флаг развевался на мачте.
Длинный, узкий флаг развевался на мачте. (emphatic)
A long narrow flag fluttered on the mast.

15. Пойду почитаю немного.
I'll go read a bit.

16. В глубине сада стоял красивый деревянный дом.
In the depth of the garden there stood a beautiful wooden house.

17. Сырой, тёплый, неосвежающий ветер продолжал дуть.
A damp warm and stale wind continued to blow.

18. Для публичной речи типичной формой является монолог в виде статьи, лекции и т.п.
The style most typical for public speaking is monolog in the form of articles, lectures, etc.

19. Квартира была большая, светлая и чистая.
The apartment was big, bright and clean.
20. Лунный ясный вечер был прекрасен.
   The clear, moonlit night was beautiful.

Exercise 8.2

Add commas to the following sentences where necessary.

1. Стал накрашивать дождь, и дети ушли в дом.
   Rain began to sprinkle and the kids went into the house.

2. Улица была узкая, но зеленая.
   The street was narrow but green.

3. И брат, и сестра пришли проводить его.
   (emphasis on the brother and sister as separate actants)
   И брат и сестра пришли проводить его.
   (emphasis on the brother and sister acting in unison)
   Brother and sister both came to see him off.

4. Какой мрачный лес и как сырое тут!
   What a gloomy forest and how damp it is here!

5. Маша и Саша тихо сидели и ждали.
   Masha and Sasha sat quietly and waited.

6. Все что-то кричали ему, а он ничего не слышал.
   Everyone was shouting something to him, but he heard nothing.

7. Шелест листьев, вознёс птиц слышались в лесу.
   Rustling leaves and raucous birds could be heard in the woods.

8. В лесу мне был знаком каждый бугорок, каждая полянка и каждая ложбинка.
   In the woods I knew every hill, every clearing, and every little gully.

9. Он написал этот рассказ год назад, но не опубликовал его.
   He wrote that story a year ago but didn’t publish it.

10. И старый и малый отступили дальше и всё глядели, и глядели вверх.
    Both young and old backed off and just stared and stared at the sky.
    И старый, и малый отступили дальше и всё глядели...
    The young as well as the old backed off and just stared...
    (In the first variant, и старый и малый is an idiom meaning “everyone,”
    while the variant with the comma emphasizes young and old as separate
    groups.)

11. Небо прояснилось, солнце стало припекать, и мы решили сходить на море.
    The sky cleared, the sun began to burn more intensely, and we decided to
take a trip to the sea.
12. Входи в природу другом, хозяином, но не жестоким, а заботливым и чутким.
Meet nature as friend and masas a great poet.rather as one who is caring and sensitive.

13. Цветы могут вам рассказать о красоте, о времени, о погоде.
Flowers can tell you about beauty, about time, about the weather.

14. Занавес поднялся, и начался спектакль.
The curtain rose and the show began.

15. Месяц святит, да не греет.
The moon shines but gives no warmth.

16. Нужно бы в Москву съездить за деньгами, да денег нет на дорогу.
I need to go to Moscow for the money but have no money.

17. Дождь опьяли листву деревьев и развеял туманную дымку.
The rain washed the tree leaves and dispersed the foggy haze.

18. Не то мысли, не то воспоминания, не то мечты бродили в его голове.
Thoughts, memories(.) or perhaps dreams wandered in his head.

19. То здесь, то там опадают осенние листья и устилают землю.
Here and there the autumn leaves fall and carpet the earth.

20. Чем он занимается и когда он появился в этих краях?
What's he up to and when did he show up here?

21. Синицы очень умны и очень любопытны.
Titmice are very smart and very curious.

22. Синицы умны, но они очень любопытны, и это губит их.
Titmice are smart but very curious and that is their downfall.

23. В окна с улицы лился глухой шум и летела пыль.
Into the windows from the street came a dull roar and flying dust.

24. Он стоял ни жив ни мёртв.
He stood neither dead nor alive.

25. Анна приедет к нам на Рождество, либо мы к ней поедем после Нового года.
Anna will visit us for Christmas or we'll visit her after New Year.

26. Солнечный жар и блеск уже сменились прохладой ночи и неярким светом молодого месяца.
The sun's heat and glare had already been replaced by the night's coolness and the dim light of the crescent moon.

27. В сыром ночном тумане всё лес, да лес, да лес.
In the dank night fog there stood trees, trees(.) and more trees.

28. Ни раба, ни повелителя друже не надо.
Friendship requires neither slave nor master.
29. Речь её лилась тяжело, но свободно.
   Her speech flowed heavily but freely.

30. На языке мед, а под языком лёд.
   A honey tongue but a heart of gall.

Exercise 9.1

Fill in the blanks with whatever internal punctuation is necessary. (Some of the sentences below may not require any internal punctuation at all.)

1. Небо прояснилось, солнце вышло из-за облаков.
   The sky cleared; the sun came out from behind the clouds.

2. Небо прояснилось, и солнце вышло из-за облаков.
   The sky cleared and the sun came out from behind the clouds.

3. Каждое утро, на восходе солнца, она уходила далеко в лес, на полянку, сидела там подольгу, возвращаясь радостная и довольная; прогулка доставляла ей огромное удовольствие и придавала ей сил.
   Every morning, at sunrise, she went deep into the forest, to a meadow, sat there a long while, returned happy and content; the walk gave her great pleasure and much strength.

4. Некоторые гости уже выходили, другие входили.
   Some guests were already leaving; others were entering.

5. Был тот вечерний час, когда стираются очертания зданий, деревьев; когда ещё дневной свет пытается, неразрывно сцепившись с ночным.
   It was that evening hour when the outlines of houses and trees dissolve, when daylight gets lost and mingles with the night.

6. Горел дом, к небу поднимался чёрный дым, на улице бегали люди.
   A house was burning; black smoke rose to the sky; people ran about in the street.

7. Горел дом, к небу поднимался чёрный дым, и на улице бегали люди.
   A house was burning, black smoke rose to the sky, and people ran about in the street.

8. Дети ещё спали; родители уже вставали.
   Дети ещё спали, родители уже вставали.
   The kids were still asleep; the parents were already getting up.

9. Дети и родители ещё спали.
   The kids and parents were still asleep.

10. В лесу весело щебетали птицы; (or,) из двора доносился детский смех.
    The birds chirped cheerfully in the forest; children’s laughter rang out from the courtyard.
Excercise 10.1

Rewrite the following sentences, adding a colon where necessary.

1. Я тебе определённо скажу: у тебя есть талант.
   I’ll definitely tell you this: you’ve got talent.

2. Она не могла спать в ту ночь: было слишком душно и жарко.
   She couldn’t sleep that night because it was too stuffy and hot.

3. Отец сдержал своё слово: ровно через год он вернулся домой.
   Father kept his word: in exactly a year he returned home.

4. Я внимательно поглядел вокруг: все лица выражали напряжённое внимание.
   I looked around carefully: everyone’s face expressed intense attentiveness.

5. Он взглянул на часы: было без четверти десять.
   He looked at the clock: it was 9:45.

6. Детей очень огорчила весть: они очень любили своего учителя.
   The news really upset the kids because they loved their teacher.

7. Пора спать: уже двенадцать часов.
   It’s time to sleep because it’s already twelve o’clock.

8. Взглянув на часы, он сказал: «Об этом поговорим позже».
   Looking at the clock, he said, “We’ll talk about that later.”

9. Коробка та волшебная: в ней скатерть самобранная, когда ни пожелаешь, напоит.
   That box is enchanted because it contains a magic tablecloth, and whenever you wish, it will provide food and drink.

10. Мальчик покраснел и сказал: «Нет, я не ел».
    The boy blushed and said, “I didn’t eat it.”

11. В комнате было совсем мало мебели: стул, стол и кровать.
    Very little furniture was in the room: a chair, table, and bed.

12. На доске было написано: «Поздравляем с Новым годом!»
    On the blackboard was written, “Happy New Year!”

13. В этой местности в лесах преобладают хвойные породы деревьев: ель, сосна, пихта, кедр.
    Conifers predominate in the local forests: spruce, pine, fir, and cedar.

14. Я перевернул фото и прочёл: «Ялта. Лето 1913 года».
    I turned the photograph over and read, “Yalta. Summer of 1913.”

15. Мы знали: он не подведёт нас.
    This we knew: He would not let us down.
Exercise 11.1

Rewrite the sentences below, inserting a dash between subject and predicate whenever necessary.

1. Чтение — вот лучшее учение.  
   *Reading is the best way to learn.*

2. Дети — это наше будущее.  
   *Children are our future.*

3. Площадь комнат — тридцать квадратных метров.  
   *The area of the room is 30 square meters.*

4. Амазонка — крупнейшая река мира.  
   *The Amazon is the world’s largest river.*

5. Дуб — светолюбивое дерево, а липа — теневыносливое дерево.  
   *The oak is a sun-loving tree, and the linden is shade-tolerant.*

6. Перемена климата на небольшом расстоянии — это и есть микроклимат.  
   *A change in climate over a small distance is exactly what a microclimate is.*

7. Космонавты — первооткрыватели космоса.  
   *Cosmonauts are discoverers of outer space.*

8. Задумчивость — это признак душевного переживания.  
   *Pensiveness is a sign of emotional trauma.*

9. Выдумывание — особый талант.  
   *The ability to think up new things is a special talent.*

10. Хлеб в пути не тяжесть.  
    *On a journey, bread is not a burden.*

11. Самое лучшее и самое святое право королей — помилование.  
    *The best and most sacred right of kings is granting pardons.*

12. Аналогия не доказательство.  
    *An analogy isn’t proof.*

13. Папа — врач, а мама — адвокат.  
    *Dad is a doctor and Mom is a lawyer.*

14. Январь только начало года.  
    *January is only the beginning of the year.*

15. Кибернетика — одна из новейших отраслей науки.  
    *Cybernetics is one of the newest branches of science.*

16. Тройцы три — девять.  
    *Three times three is nine.*
17. Спешить — народ смеяться.
   To make haste is to make people laugh.
18. Берёза точно стройная, нарядная девушка.
   A birch tree is like a slender, well-dressed young woman.
19. Труд для неё наслаждение.
   Work for her is enjoyment.
20. Чертёж — международный язык техники.
   The mechanical drawing is the international language of technology.

Exercise 11.2

Insert a dash between the dependent and main clauses in each of the following sentences.

1. Хочешь — пойдём в лес, не хочешь — останемся дома.
   If you want(,) we’ll go to the woods; if you don’t(,) we’ll stay home.
2. Горы оседают — реки раздаются, реки высыхают — русла остаются.
   When mountains wear away(,) the depths of the earth are exposed; when rivers dry up(,) their channels remain.
3. Выпадает снег — будем кататься на лыжах.
   a. If it snows(,) we’ll go skiing.
   b. Come snow, we’ll go skiing.
4. Много снега — много хлеба.
   When there’s lots of snow(,) there’s lots of grain.
5. Выстрелил раздался — дым наполнил комнату.
   A shot rang out and smoke filled the room.
6. Всё так чётко, ладно — душа радуется.
   Everything is so accurate and so harmonious that the soul rejoices.
7. Займёшься интересным и важным делом — хандру как рукой снимет.
   Take up some interesting and important task and your depression vanishes in a flash.
8. Убеждений у него не было — было честолюбие.
   He had no convictions, only ambition.
9. Придёт лето — поеду на юг.
   a. When summer comes(,) we’ll go south.
   b. Come summer(,) we’ll go south.
10. Геология и климат, фауна и флора — всё оставалось загадкой.
    Geology and climate, fauna and flora—everything was still a mystery.
11. Хочешь увидеть подальше — взбираясь на гору, хочешь побольше узнать — спрашивай старших.
   *If you want to see farther(,) climb a hill; if you want to know more(,) ask your elders.*

12. Лес ру́бят — щё́нки летят.
   *Chop trees and splinters fly.*
   *(Compare: You can’t make an omlette without breaking eggs.)*

13. Просну́лся — вокру́г меня́ незнакомые ли́ца.
   *When I awoke, there were unfamiliar faces around me.*

14. Выйде́т сольце из-за облака — чу́вствуешь на лице горя́чую ласку света.
   *When the sun comes out from behind a cloud(,) you feel the hot caress of light on your face.*

15. И блё́дное голубое небо, и мя́гкий плеск моря, и крик чаке́к над водо́й — всё это напоминало мне мой родные места́.
   *The pale blue sky, the soft splash of the sea(,) and the mewing of the gulls across the water—it all reminded me of my native haunts.*

   *Everything around me—the trees, bushes, and flowers—took on a sort of odd contour.*

17. Раз солга́л — наве́к лгуно́м стал.
   *If you lie once you’re a liar forever.*
   *(Lie once and you’re a liar forever.)*

18. Лу́на свети́ла я́рко — мож́но было рассмотреть на земле́ каж́дую соло́минку.
   *The moon shone brightly(,) so every straw was visible on the ground.*

**Exercise 11.3**

Fill in the blank with a colon or a dash depending on whether the subordinate clause comes first or last in the sentence.

1. a. **Я́рко блену́ла молния — ребёно́к в стра́хе обхвати́л мать обё́ими рукáми.**
   *The lightning flashed brightly(,) so the terrified child hugged its mother with both arms.*

   b. **Ребёно́к в стра́хе обхвати́л мать обё́ими рукáми: я́рко блену́ла молния.**
   *The terrified child hugged its mother with both arms because lightning flashed brightly.*
2. a. Река вышла из берегов — прервалось сообщение с городом.
   The river flooded(,) so contact with the town was cut off.

   b. Прервалось сообщение с городом: река вышла из берегов.
   Contact with the town was cut off because the river flooded.

3. a. Ноги стали увязать в грязи — мы решили свернуть с дороги.
   My feet began sinking in the mud(,) so I decided to turn off the road.

   b. Я решил свернуть с дороги: ноги начали увязать в грязи.
   I decided to turn off the road because my feet began sinking in the mud.

4. a. Впереди были заросли колючего кустарника — пройти было невозможно.
   Thickets of thorny bush lay ahead(,) so it was impossible to pass.

   b. Пройти было невозможно: впереди были заросли колючего кустарника.
   It was impossible to pass because thickets of thorny bush lay ahead.

5. a. Я стал прислушиваться: раздался какой-то странный звук.
   I began to listen carefully because there was a strange noise.

   b. Раздался какой-то странный звук — я стал прислушиваться.
   There was a strange sound(,) so I began to listen carefully.

6. a. Зажглись яркие фонари — стало светло как днем.
   Bright streetlights came on and it became as light as day.

   b. Стало светло как днем: зажглись яркие фонари.
   It became as light as day because bright streetlights came on.

7. a. Идти было трудно: шёл мокрый снег.
   It was difficult to walk because wet snow was falling.

   b. Шёл мокрый снег — идти было трудно.
   Wet snow was falling and so it was difficult to walk.

8. a. Зажгли свечи: стало темно.
   They lit candles because it began to get dark.

   b. Стало темно — зажгли свечи.
   It began to get dark(,) so they lit candles.

9. a. Пришли заранее: не терпелось посмотреть на это чудо.
   They came early because they couldn’t wait to witness that marvel.

   b. Не терпелось посмотреть на это чудо — пришли заранее.
   They couldn’t wait to witness that marvel and so they came early.

10. a. Кто-то зажег спичку — мелькнул огонёк.
    Someone lit a match and a little light flickered on.

   b. Мелькнул огонёк: кто-то зажег спичку.
    A little light flickered on because someone lit a match.
Exercise 11.4

Rewrite the sentences below, filling in each blank with a dash or a comma plus dash.

1. **Общий интерес, созда́вший ве́ли́кое кня́жество Ки́евское,— вне́шняя торговля,— направлял и его дальнейшее разви́тие.**
   The mutual interest that created the great Kievan state, foreign trade, directed its future development as well.

2. **И ещё одно́ примечательное свойство, прису́шее характеру геро́йне,— женственность (Агáтов).**
   And there is one more notable quality characteristic of the heroine, femininity.

3. **Второе условие, необходи́мое для оживле́ния организма,— искусственное дыхание.**
   The second factor needed to revive a person is artificial respiration.

4. **Ей на вид было лет пятнаде́сат — пятьдеся́т пять.**
   She appeared to be 50 or 55 years of age.

5. **Кроме сё́рых хле́бо́в— ржи и овса,— стали се́ять много пшени́цы, коно́пли и карто́феля.**
   In addition to the “brown grains,” rye and oats, they began planting lots of wheat, hemp(,), and potatoes.

6. **Про́йди́ киломе́тров пять — шесть, мы останавлив́лись на отдых.**
   After traveling five to six kilometers we stopped for rest.

7. **На севе́ре Саха́лина— тайга́, на о́ге, омы́вае́мом тёплыми морскими тече́ниями,— прóбковое дерево, бамбук, тис.**
   There is taiga in northern Sakhalin, but in the south, which is washed by warm sea currents, grow cork trees, bamboo(,) and yew.

8. **Третьи́ категории́ воздей́ствия, ко́торым подверга́ется организ́м в космосе,— это влия́ние радиа́ции.**
   A third type of effect the body is subjected to in space is the influence of radiation.

9. **Опреде́ление наказа́ния, ко́торое должнó быть осно́вано на зако́не,— де́ло судей-законове́дов (Клю́чевский).**
   Determining punishment, a task which should be grounded in law, is the work of experienced judges.

10. **На один из таки́х лекций пе́ред студе́нтами — буду́щими учителя́ми — я раска́зывал о творче́ском путь́ писа́теля Констан́тина Пау́стовско́го.**
    On one of those lectures for students studying to be teachers, I talked about the creative development of the writer Konstantin Paustovsky.
11. They hired us as quarry drivers and gave us living quarters consisting of a room with two cots and a single nightstand.

12. Then houses began to catch fire in the night, several at a time in different parts of town.

13. Today[,] the ideas of Marx, Engels, and Lenin are much criticized.

14. I turned off for a minute to go to a spring, so I could get a drink.

15. The distance from the village is one to three verssts.

16. At any time of day, cars travel the Kiev-Kharkov road.

17. And now hold this, a kilogram of shish kabob meat.

18. Kids generally are interested in two times, the present and the future.

19. The birch—a beautiful, curly-branched tree with a white trunk—has become the lyric symbol of Russia.

20. The average birch tree lives a hundred to hundred and fifty years.

Exercise 12.1

Rewrite the following sentences adding the proper symbols in place of the blanks. Pay attention to the order when two or more marks must be placed in succession.

1. That sort [of pear] was fast ripening—the best kind for kids.

2. I don’t like you (Why deceive?), but I need you.

3. For dinner they served shchi (cabbage soup), stewed meat[,] and compote.
4. Спутник на орбите! Сбываются мечты Циolkовского! (Бурные аплодисменты).
The sputnik is in orbit! Tsiolkovsky's dreams are coming true! (Enthusiastic applause.)

5. Он хороший альпинист (скалолаз).
He's a good alpinist (mountain climber).

6. Он советовал нам не приходить. (А мы всё равно придём).
He advised us not to come. (But we'll come anyway).

7. К вечеру поезд прибыл в Ленинград (Санкт-Петербург).
Toward evening, the train arrived in Leningrad (St. Petersburg).

8. Таня улыбнулась (неужели?) и смущённо отвернулась.
Tanya smiled (really?) and turned away in embarrassment.

9. Потом Васька тайком украл все деньги (ну и подлец!), а сам стал обвинять своего брата.
Then that Vasya secretly stole all the money (the scoundrel!) and later began to accuse his own brother.

10. Вот транскрипция некоторых слов: конечьно [канэшна]; пожалуйста [пажаляуста].
Here's the transcription of a few words: конечьно [канэшна]; пожалуйста [пажаляуста].

Exercise 13.1

Use quotation marks in the Russian sentences below where appropriate. Be careful about when marks of punctuation proceed and follow a closing quote.

1. У меня автомобиль «Нива».
I own a Niva.

2. Ты читал роман Пастернака «Доктор Живаго»?
Did you read Pasternak's novel Doctor Zhivago?

3. Тебе понравилась его статья в газете «Вечерняя Москва»?
Did you like his article in the Evening Moscow?

4. Роман «Один день в жизни Ивана Денисовича» впервые появился в журнале Новый мир.
The novel One Day in the Life of Ivan Denisovich appeared for the first time in the magazine Novy Mir.

5. Лариса купила своему Анатолию одеколон «Шипр».
Larissa bought her Anatoly some Shipr cologne.

6. Лариса сказала Анатолию: «Я купила тебе одеколон „Шипр“».
Larissa told Anatoly, “I bought you some Shipr cologne.”
7. Уберї отси́да свой вони́чий «Шипр»!
Get your stinky Shipr out of here!

8. Твоё «я умею всё» может только помешать делу.
Your “I know how to do everything” can only interfere with the task.

9. Все егó «фортели» привели дириêтора в бёшенство.
All his “monkey business” enraged the boss.

The Zhiguli, Volga, Zaporozhets, and Chaika are models of cars.

11. В гостинице «Ко́смос» мы прожи́ли две недели.
We stayed two weeks in the Kosmos Hotel.

12. Ты выпи́сываешь газету «Нью-Йорк Тáймс»?
Do you subscribe to the New York Times?

13. Достоевский очень критически отозвался о ромáне Чернышёвского «Что делать?»
Dostoevsky sharply criticized Chernyshevsky’s novel What is to be Done?

14. Ты помнишь наизу́сть басню Кры́лова «Ли́са и вино́гра́ды»?
Do you remember by heart Krylov’s fable, “The Fox and the Grapes”?

15. Вдруг раздало́сь душераздира́ющее «Дерじ́ вора́!
Suddenly there erupted a heart-rending shout of “Stop the thief!”

Exercise 14.1

Punctuate the following sentences as they would appear in a printed text. Pay attention to direct speech and other elements that might require quotation marks.

1. — Дóбре́е úтро. “Good morning.”
   — Привёт. “Hi.”

2. — Дóбре́е úтро,— сказа́л Васи́лий.
   — Привёт,— отве́тил незнакомый пárень.
   “Good morning,” said Vasily.
   “Hi,” replied the stranger.

3. — На чтó жáлуетесь?— спроси́л вра́ч.
   — Нóги болят,— отве́тил старик.
   “What’s ailing you?” asked the doctor.
   “My legs hurt,” answered the old man.

4. «А где дё́нги?»— «Не знаю́».— «Ты знаёшь, да не хо́чешь признáться»,— «Нет, просто не знаю́».
   “And where’s the money?” “I don’t know.” “You do know and don’t want to admit it.” “No, I simply don’t know.”
5. Девочка ответила: «Я никогда раньше не была в этом городе».
The little girl answered, “I’ve never been in this town before.”

“I didn’t see anyone here,” answered the little girl.

7. «Пиши чище», — строго говорила учительница.
“Write more neatly,” the tutor said sternly.

8. «Всё понял», — медленно произнёс Саша.
“I understand everything,” Sasha intoned slowly.

9. Бабушка сказала: «Дети, уже час. Пора обедать».
Grandma said, “Children, it’s already one. It’s time to eat.”

10. «Дети, уже час. Пора обедать», — сказала бабушка.
“Kids, it’s already one. It’s time to eat,” said Grandma.

11. «Дети, уже час», — сказала бабушка.— Пора обедать».
“Kids, it’s already one,” said Grandma, “It’s time to eat.”

12. «Дети, уже час,— сказала бабушка и решительным тоном добавила:
«Пора обедать!»
“Kids, it’s already one,” said Grandma, and added in a decisive tone, “It’s time to eat!”

13. Её «Нет, я не буду» прозвучало тихо и нерешительно.
Her “No, I won’t” sounded quiet and indecisive.

Part Three. Symbols Resembling Punctuation

Exercise 15.1

Rewrite the following Russian words correctly, either as a single word or by adding a hyphen or apostrophe.

1. давным-давно (long, long ago)
2. во-вторых (in the second place)
3. пол-одиннадцатого (10:30)
4. полдевятого (1:30)
5. город Лас-Вегас (the city of Las Vegas)
6. Нью-Йорк (New York)
7. Игорь-князь and князь Игорь (Prince Igor)
8. пол-Москвы (half of Moscow)
9. Пуэрто Рико (Puerto Rico)
10. что-нибудь (anything)
11. по-итальянски (in Italian)
12. много-много (very many)
13. Жанна д’Арк (Joan of Arc)
14. β-частица (beta particle)
15. 10-километровый (ten-kilometer, adjective)
16. бутылка из-под пива (a beer bottle)
17. из-за двери (out from behind the door)
18. Оклахома-Сити (Oklahoma City)
19. всë-таки (nevertheless)
20. полго́рода (half the city)
21. пол-Киева (half of Kiev)
22. 100-процентный (one-hundred-percent, adjective)
23. Москвá-река и рекá Москвá (the Moscow River)
24. рекá Волга (the Volga River)
25. кра́сно-жёлтый (reddish-yellow)
26. Санкт-Петербург (St. Petersburg)
27. Оска́р Уайльд и о́скар-уайльдовский (Oscar Wilde)
28. пресс-па́ньé (paperweight)
29. чëрез три-четы́ре часá (in three or four hours)
30. час пик (rush hour)
31. Хуан де ла Крус (Juan de la Cruz, a person)
32. по-нóвому (in a new way)
33. по-моёму (in my opinion)
34. по его мнéнию (in his opinion)
35. Дай-ка мне эту книгу. (Go ahead and give me that book.)

Exercise 15.2

Hyphenate each of the following Russian words in as many ways as possible.

1. племённик (nephew) пле-мë́нник, пле-мë́н-ник
2. написáть (to write) на-писáть, напи-сать
3. сочинéние (composition) со-чинéние, сочинé-ние
4. корóва (cow) ко-рóва, корó-ва
5. медвежóнок (bear cub) мед-вежóнок, медве-жóнок, медвежó-нок
6. пíсьменный (written) пíсь-менный, пíсь-мен-ный
7. поссóриться (to argue) по-ссóриться, поссó-риться, поссóриться, поссóрить-ся
8. сестря́ (sister) се-стра́, сестра́, сестрá
9. англи́йский (English) англи́йский, англи́й-ский
10. скóльзкий (slippery) скóль-зкий
11. массa (mass)马克思
12. москóвский (Moscow) моско-вский, моско́вский, мос-ко́вский, моско́в-ский (best)
13. зáвтра (tomorrow) зá-втра, зáв-тра, зá-вт-ра
14. коммунa (commune) ком-мунa, коммún-на
15. предвьёдеть (to foresee) пред-вёдеть, предвьёдеть
16. **пассердиться** (to get mad)  **рас-сердиться, рассердиться, рассердить-ся**

**Exercise 15.3**

The following words are written in all capitals. Rewrite them in small letters, using capitals only as required for proper spelling.

1. **понедельник** (Monday)
2. **улица Пушкина** (Pushkin Street)
3. **Вторая Мировая война** (World War Two)
4. **Красная площадь** (Red Square)
5. **роман «Преступление и наказание»** (the novel “Crime and Punishment”)
6. **газета «Правда»** (the newspaper “Pravda”)
7. **Лев Николаевич Толстой** (Lev Nikolaevich Tolstoy)
8. **господин Смит** (Mr. Smith)
9. **товарищ Иванов** (Comrade Ivanov)
10. **профессор Костров** (Professor Kostrov)
11. **МГУ** (Moscow State University)
12. **Леонардо да Винчи** (Leonardo da Vinci)
13. **Солт-Лейк-Сити** (Salt Lake City)
14. **Россия** (Russia)
15. **русский язык** (the Russian language)
16. **американец** (American, noun)
17. **февраль** (February)
18. **Санкт-Петербург** (St. Petersburg, noun)
19. **санкт-петербургский** (St. Petersburg, adjective)
20. **Олегова комната** (Oleg’s room)
21. **Ла-Манш** (the English Channel)
22. **Белый Нил** (the White Nile)
23. **Средиземное море** (the Mediterranean Sea)
24. **октябрь** (October)
25. **Японское море** (Sea of Japan)

**Exercise 15.4**

Rewrite the following abbreviations, using a capital only where necessary as a spelling device. Add periods or hyphens as required.

1. **м** *(метр, meter)*
2. **и т.д.** *(и так далее, etc.)*
3. **г.** *(год, year)*
4. **стр.** *(страница, page)*
5. **ж. д.** *(железная дорога, railroad, noun)*
6. **ж.-д.** *(железнодорожный, railroad, adjective)*
7. МГУ (Моско́вский госуда́рственный университе́т, Moscow State University)
8. р-н (райо́н, district)
9. с. х. (сельское хозяйство, agriculture, noun)
10. ООН (Организа́ция Объеди́нённых На́ций, UN, or United Nations)
11. ул. (у́лица, street)
12. кв. (кварти́ра, apartment)
13. кг (кило́грамм, kilogram)
14. гг. (года́, years)
15. и др. (и други́е, and others)

Exercise 16.1

Rewrite each of the following English numerical notations using symbols appropriate for a Russian text. (The Russian words are also provided below as reference.)

1. 5,6 (пять це́льных шесть десятых)
   5.6 (five and six tenths, five point six)
2. 12 500 (двенадцать ты́сяч пятьсот)
   12,500 (twelve thousand five hundred)
3. 25.XII.93 (двадцать пя́тое декабрь́ ты́сяча девятьсот пятьдеся́т трё́х го́да)
   12/25/93 (December 25, 1993)
4. 02. III. 67 (второ́е мара́та ты́сяча девятьсот семьдесят седьмого го́да)
   3/02/67 (March 2, 1967)
5. 2 + 2 = 4 (двáжды два — четвéре)
6. 3 - 1 = 2 (от трéх отнять еди́н равня́ется двум, о́г два в colloquial speech)
7. 4 х 4 = 16 (четвéрежды четвéре равня́ется шестна́дцати, о́г шестна́дцать в colloquial speech)
8. 16 : 4 = 4 (шестьна́дцать раздeлить на четвéре равня́ется четы́рём, о́г четы́ре в colloquial speech)
9. 1/2 (одна́ вторая́, ор полови́на) (one half)
10. 12,3 (двенадцать це́льных и три десятых)
    (twelve and three tenths)
11. 5 м/c (пять метров в секунду)
    (five meters per second)
12. +10°Ц (плюс де́сять гра́дусов по Цéльсию, ог де́сять гра́дусов выше нуля по Цéльсию)
    (+10°C, ten degrees Celsius above zero)
13. -24°Ф (минус двадцать четыре градуса по Фаренгейту, со двадцать четыре градуса ниже нуля по Фаренгейту)
(-24°F, twenty four degrees Fahrenheit below zero)

14. 15 500,5 (пятнадцать тысяч пятьсот и пять десятых)
(fifteen thousand, five hundred and five tenths)

15. 50 км в час (пятьдесят километров в час)
(fifty kilometers per hour)

16. 10:30 (пол-одиннадцатого)
(ten thirty.)

Exercise 17.1

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the Russian name of this symbol ($$)?

Параграф

2. What does the number after the word тираж signify?

The number of books published.

3. What is this box called and what does it signify: ________?

The траурные рамки signify that the person whose name is so marked passed away while the book was in press.

4. How do the vertical words on the spine of a Russian book read?

From bottom to top (unlike English, which is written from top to bottom).

5. What mark of punctuation is normally used after the salutation at the beginning of a Russian letter?

An exclamation point (or sometimes a comma in formal style).

6. What mark of punctuation is normally used after the phrase

С уважением, With respect, at the end of a letter?

No mark (whereas English uses a comma).

7. When are forms of вы, you, capitalized in a Russian letter?

When they refer to a single person rather than a group.

8. Rewrite these dates in the Russian style using only numerals:

January 3, 1991  3.I.91
August 5, 1985   5.VIII.85
May 30, 1997     30.V.97
November 21, 1965  21.XI.65

9. Copy these lines of poetry, adding capital letters where necessary:
Белеет парус одинокий  
A lonely sail gleams white
В тумане моря голубом.  
In the blue haze of the sea.

10. Rewrite the following phrases and sentences, capitalizing where necessary and using the proper punctuation:

a. Вот и всё (Аплодисменты).
   And that's all. (Applause.)

b. Пёрвый блин комом (Пословица).
   If at first you don’t succeed, try, try again. (Proverb.)

c. Быть или не быть — вот вопрос (Шекспир).
   To be, or not to be, that is the question. (Shakespeare.)

d. Старик говорит: «Не знаю».
   The old man says, “I don’t know.”

e. «Не знаю», — говорит старик.
   “I don’t know,” says the old man.

f. «Ирония судьбы, или С лёгким паром»
   “The Irony of Fate, or Have a Good Steambath”
Bibliography

Advanced students who wish to continue their study of Russian punctuation, orthography, or syntax should consult any of the following excellent sources:


The following books were prepared with the English speaking student in mind:


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English-Russian Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abbreviation (сокращение) 40, 180, 192–94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyphenated ~ (сокращение с дефиксом) 194–95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accent (= word stress) (ударение) 172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative case (винительный падеж) 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acronym (аббревиатура) 193–94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective (имя прилагательное) 1, 14, 94–98, and elsewhere in passing parallel ~s (однородные прилагательные) 94–98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possessive ~ (притяжательное прилагательное) 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qualitative ~ (качественное прилагательное) 94–98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relational ~ (относительное прилагательное) 94–98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adverb (наречение) 1, 11, 15–16, 54, 93, 127, 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adverbial modifier (обстоятельство) (see also “modifier”) 11–12, 54, 63–64 (in apposition), 207–09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ of manner (~ способа действия) 12, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ of place (~ места) 11–12, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ of time (~ времени) 11, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ of purpose (~ цели) 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>detached ~ (обособленное ~) 19, 21, 57–58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extended ~ (распространённое ~) 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agreement (= concord) (согласование) 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alphabetism (аббревиатура) 193–94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antecedent (определённое слово)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23, 72–74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apostrophe (апостроф) 169, 237–38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appositive (приложение) 11, 16–19, 170, 207–08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>detached ~ (обособленное приложение) 19, 21, 58–59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>article (артый) 2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asterisk (звездочка) 12, 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute (определение) 13–16, 18–19, and elsewhere in passing coordinated ~ (согласованное определение) 18–19, 207–08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>detached ~ (обособленное определение) 19, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-coordinated ~ (несогласованное определение) 128–29, 207–08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boldface print (жирный шрифт) 148, 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brackets (скобки) 148–54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angle ~ (угловые скобки) 44, 148, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>round ~ (круглые скобки) 148–52 (see also “parentheses”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>square ~ (квадратные скобки) 45, 148, 152–53, 198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clause (предложение)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attributive (or relative) ~ (определительная придаточная часть) 23–24, 72–75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
and elsewhere in passing
~ of concession (придаточное уступительное) 25, 90–91
~ of condition (~ условия) 25, 89–90, 135–36
~ of manner (~ образа действия) 25, 85–87
~ of place (~ места) 25, 77–80
~ of purpose (or reason) (~ причины) 25, 82–85, 137, 220–21
~ of result (or effect) (~ следствия) 88–89
~ of time (~ времени) 80–82, 136, 220
explanatory clause (изъяснительная придаточная часть) 23, 69–72, 217–19
main clause (главное предложение) 22, 112, 219–20, 229–30, and elsewhere in passing
predicate subordinate clause (придаточное предложение-сказуемое) 75–77
colon (двоеточие) iv, 49, 118–19 (to introduce a reason), 119 (to explain a reason), 119–20 (with quoted material), 120 (with words describing a vivid impression), 121 (exercise), 133 (with generalizing words), 139–41 (stylistic comparison with the dash), 151–52 (with parentheses), 158–59 and 164 (with quotation marks), 198 (as division sign in arithmetic), 198 (in clock time), 228 and 231–32 (key to exercise)
comma (запятая) iv, 49–112, 151–52 (with parentheses), 158–59 and 162–65 (with quotation marks), 196 (with numbers), 203–04 (with salutations and farewells in letters), 214–27 and 233–34, 241 (keys to exercises)
backward comma (= apostrophe) (запятая наоборот) 169, 237–38
comma of enclosure (запятая выделительная) 49–50 (with direct address), 50 (with interjections), 50–54 (with parenthetical words), 54–57 (when English uses a comma but Russian doesn’t), 54–55 (closed vs. open style of English comma usage), 56 (in dates and addresses), 57–64 (with detached sentence elements), 64–66 (with phrases of comparison), 68–92 (with subordinate clauses), 144–47 (combined with the dash)
comma of separation (запятая разделительная) 93–94 (separating parallel items), 94–98 (with strings of adjectives), 98–99 (with repeated words), 99–103 (with simple coordinating conjunctions), 103–05 (with parallel sentences), 105–06 (with adver- sative conjunctions), 106–10 (with repeating conjunctions), 114–16 (stylistic competition with the semicolon), 178–79 (stylistic competition with hyphen)
colon (двоеточие) iv, 49, 118–19 (to introduce a reason), 119 (to explain a reason), 119–20 (with quoted material), 120 (with words describing a vivid impression), 121 (exercise), 133 (with generalizing words), 139–41 (stylistic comparison with the dash), 151–52 (with parentheses), 158–59 and 164 (with quotation marks), 198 (as division sign in arithmetic), 198 (in clock time), 228 and 231–32 (key to exercise)
comma (запятая) iv, 49–112, 151–52 (with parentheses), 158–59 and 162–65 (with quotation marks), 196 (with numbers), 203–04 (with salutations and farewells in letters), 214–27 and 233–34, 241 (keys to exercises)
backward comma (= apostrophe) (запятая наоборот) 169, 237–38
comma of enclosure (запятая выделительная) 49–50 (with direct address), 50 (with interjections), 50–54 (with parenthetical words), 54–57 (when English uses a comma but Russian doesn’t), 54–55 (closed vs. open style of English comma usage), 56 (in dates and addresses), 57–64 (with detached sentence elements), 64–66 (with phrases of comparison), 68–92 (with subordinate clauses), 144–47 (combined with the dash)
comma of separation (запятая разделительная) 93–94 (separating parallel items), 94–98 (with strings of adjectives), 98–99 (with repeated words), 99–103 (with simple coordinating conjunctions), 103–05 (with parallel sentences), 105–06 (with adversative conjunctions), 106–10 (with repeating conjunctions), 114–16 (stylistic competition with the semicolon), 178–79 (stylistic competition with hyphen)
comment (new information) (рёма) 7–9, 84, 129, 135, 207, 220–22
common member (общий член) 104
communicative function (коммуникативная задача) 4
comparison (сравнение) 64–66, 126
concord (согласование) 14–15
adversative (or contrastive) ~
(противительный союз) 29–30, 105, 133–34
compound coordinating ~s
(сложные сочинительные
союзы) 30 (see also “repeating conjunctions”)
copulative ~ (соединительный союз) 29–30
disjunctive ~ (разделительный союз) 29–30
repeating ~s (повторяющиеся союзы) 30–31, 94–98, 106–10
simple ~ (простой союз) 29–30, 99–101
subordinating ~ (подчинительный союз) 22, 26–28, 64–66 (in phrases of comparison), 69 (in explanatory clauses), 134–38
conjunctive word (соединительное слово) 24, 26–28, 69–91, 209–12, and elsewhere in passing
dash (тире) iv, 49, 99 (with repeated words), 120 (with words describing a vivid impression), 122–31 (in place of a linking verb), 131–32 (in elliptical sentences), 132–33 (with generalizing words), 133–34 (to replace an adverstative conjunction), 134–38 (in asyndetic complex sentences), 139–41 (stylistic comparison with the colon), 144 (to set of emotional words), 144–47 (combined with the comma), 161–68 (with quoted material), 179 (stylistic contrast with hyphen), 229–34
connective dash (соединительное тире) 141–42
explanatory dash (пояснятельное тире) 143–44
date (число) 202–03
direct address (= vocative) (прямое обращение) 20–21, 49–50, 208
direct speech (прямая речь) 155, 161–68
division sign (знак деления) 198
exclamation (восклицание) 4, 105
exclamation point (восклицательный знак) iv, 39, 41–42 (as end punctuation), 42–43, 45 (combined with question mark), 151 (with parentheses), 157–58 (with quotation marks), 165 (when reporting direct speech), 203 (with salutations in letters), 241 (key to exercises)
fraction sign (дробь) 199
functional sentence perspective (information structure) (актуальное членение предложения) 7–9, 84, 129, 135, 207, 220–22
hyphen (дефис or черточка) viii, 122, 142 (contrast with the dash), 170–83 (in spelling), 184–85 (to divide word at end of line), 186–88 (hyphenated proper names), 194–95 (in abbreviations), 237–39 (key to exercises)
hyphenated compound (сложное слово с дефисом) 172–78, 188
hyphenation (перенос) 184–85
indentation (абзац) 161, 205
imperative (повелительное наклонение) 179
infinitive (инфинитив) 12, 13, 16, 123–24
inserted element (вставная конструкция) 20, 144, 148
interjection (междометие) 2, 20–21, 50
intonation (интонация) 4–7, 133, 144, 182
italics (курсив) 149, 156

letter (буква) 182
  capital ~ (заглавная, or прописная, буква) 38–39 (as beginning punctuation), 149 (in stage directions), 156 (all capitals used for emphasis), 185–90 (in spelling), 190–91 (words capitalized in English but not in Russian), 193–94 (in abbreviations), 200 (in formatting poetry), 201 (in quoted material), 202 (in titles and headings), 204–05 (used as a formatting device), 239 and 242 (key to exercise)
  small ~ (строчная буква) 190–91, 193–94 (in abbreviations), 239 (key to exercise)

minus sign (знак минуса) 198

modifier (определение) 54, and elsewhere in passing
  adjectival ~ (прилагательное) 14–16
  adverbial ~ (обстоятельство) 11–12, 60–61
  coordinated ~ (согласованное определение) 14
  non-coordinated ~ (несогласованное определение) 15–16, 127

morpHEME (мorfema) 184

mourning frame (траурные рамки) 205, 241

multiplication sign (знак умножения) 198

noun (имя существительное) 1, and elsewhere in passing

number word (числительное) 14, 124,

number of copies printed (тираж) 205, 241

number symbol (цифра) 182, 196–99, 240–41

object complement (дополнение) 11–13, 18–19, 54, 79, 207–08
detached object (обособленное дополнение) 19, 21
direct object (прямое дополнение) 11, 13
indirect object (косвенное дополнение) 12–13
parallel direct objects (однородные прямые дополнения) 31, 93
parallel indirect objects (однородные косвенные дополнения) 31

onomatopoeia (звукоподражание) 183

paragraph (абзац) 161–62, 205 (see also “indentation”)
parallel items (or items in a series) (однородные члены) 31–32, 93–98, 102–03, 106–10
extended ~ (распространенные однородные члены) 114–15
parentheses (круглые скобки) iv, 49, 138–39 (in stage directions, or stenographic transcriptions), 150–51 (with end punctuation), 151–52 (with marks of internal punctuation), 166 165 (when reporting direct speech)
parentheticals (вводные слова) 20–21, 50–54, 208–09
part of speech (часть речи) 1

participle (причастие) 14

participial phrase (причастный оборот) 58

particle (частица) 2, 66, 127, 179, 181–82

period (точка) iv, 39–40 (to end a declarative sentence), 150–51 (with
parentheses), 157–58 (with quotation marks), and 162, 165 (when reporting direct speech), 192–94 (with abbreviations), 196–97 (with numbers and dates), 204–05 (used as a formatting device), 239–40 (key to exercise)

plus sign (знак плюс) 198

points of omission (многоточие) 38, 43 (as end punctuation), 43–44 (sentence internal), 151 (with parentheses), 153 (with angle brackets), 157–58 (with quotation marks), 165 (when reporting direct speech)

predicate (сказуемое) 3, 8, 18–19, 93, 105, 125–29, 207–09, 229–30, and elsewhere in passing

extended predicate (распространённое сказуемое) 10–11

parallel predicates (однородные сказуемые) 31–32, 126

predicate nominal (именное сказуемое) 3, 11, 13, 18–19, 24, 79, 125–29, 207–09, 219–20

prepositional phrase (предложная конструкция) 11, 15, 59–60

preposition (предлог) 1, 174, 180

pronoun (местоимение) 1, 14, 23, and elsewhere in passing

demonstrative ~ (указательное ~)

14, 96

indefinite ~ (неопределённое ~)

181

interrogative ~ (вопросительное ~)

26

negative ~ (отрицательное ~)

181

personal ~ (личное ~)

128

possessive ~ (притяжательное ~)

14, 96

relative ~ (относительное ~)

23

question (вопрос) 4, 105, and elsewhere in passing

question mark (вопросительный знак) iv, 38, 40–41 (as end punctuation), 42–43, 45 (combined with exclamation point), 151 (with parentheses), 157 (with quotation marks), 165 (when reporting direct speech)

question word (вопросительное слово) 46, 39, and elsewhere in passing

quotation marks (кавычки-ёлочки « ») iv, 45–46, 49, 155–68, 235–37 (key to exercises)

English-style double (" ") or single (‘ ’) quotation marks (кавычки-лавочки) 159, 169 (double quotes to replace the hard sign)

request (просьба) 4

response phrase (релятив) 66

section symbol (пáрафраг) 205, 241

semicolon (точка с запятой) iv, 49, 114–15 (with extended parallel items), 115 (with coordinating conjunctions), 115–16 (with extended dependent clauses in a series), 117 (exercise), 158–59 (with quotation marks)

sentence (предложение) 1–48, and elsewhere in passing

asynthetic ~ (бессоюзное ~)

133–38

complex ~ (сложноподчинённое ~)

22–28, 35, 37, 135–38, 212

compound ~ (сложносочи́нённое ~)

22, 29–34, 35–37, 103–05, 133–34, 212

compound-complex ~ (сложное ~ с сочлени́ем и подчинени́ем)

36, 37, 212

elliptic sentence (неполное ~)

36–37, 131, 212

exclamatory ~ (восклицательное ~)

7
imperative ~ (повелительное ~) 6
impersonal ~ (безличное ~) 36, 37, 212
inherently elliptic ~ (эллиптическое ~) 36, 37
interrogative ~ (вопросительное ~) 4
narrative (or declarative) ~ (позвествовательное ~) 4, 39-40
non-simple ~ (сложное ~) 22-34, 37
parallel ~s (однородные предложения) 32-34, 103-05
~ structure (структура предложения) 1, 10 (see also “syntax”)
simple extended ~ (простое распространённое ~) 10, 35, 37, 212
simple non-extended ~ (простое нераспространённое ~) 3, 10, 35, 37, 212
simple ~ (простое ~) 1-10, 35, 212
sentence elements (члены предложения)
detached secondary ~ (обособленные второстепенные ~) 19, 21, 57-59
parallel ~ (однородные ~) 31-32, 223-24
primary ~ (главные ~) 3, 166-67
secondary ~ (второстепенные ~) 11-19
separation mark (знак отбивки) 196
simile (sct comparison) (устобийчивые сравнения) 64-66
slash (вертикальная пауза) 199
space (пробел) 170, 196
spine (of a book) (черешок) 205
stage directions (ремарки) 149, 200-01
statement (утверждение) 4
stenographic transcripts (стенограф-мы) 149
stub compound (сложносокращённое слово) 194-95
subject (подлежащее) 8, 13, 18-19, 125-29, 207-09
extended subject (распространённое подлежащее) 10
parallel subjects (однородные подлежащие) 31, 93
syntax (синтаксис) 1-37, and elsewhere in passing
title (название) 18, 156-57, 171, 202
topic (old information) (тема) 7-9, 84, 129, 135, 207, 220-22
transcription (транскрипция) 153
underlining (or underscoring) (подчеркивание) 156
verb (глагол) 1, and elsewhere in passing
intransitive ~ (непереходный глагол) 11
linking ~ (глагол-связка) 3, 13, 122, 145
modal ~ (модальный глагол) 11
transitive ~ (переходный глагол) 11-13
verbal adverb (депричастие) 60-61
virgule (вертикальная пауза) 199
vocative (= direct address) (обращение) 20-21, 49-50, 203 (in letters)
word (слово) 1
compound ~ (сложное слово) 170-84
function ~s (служебные слова) 1, 4, 10, 175
generalizing ~ (обобщающее слово) 32, 118-19, 132-33, 145
reporting ~s (авторские слова) 162-66
word order (порядок слов) 4